# FORD **RANGER** Owner's Manual




Ford

Go Further

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2015

All rights reserved.

Part Number: EB3B-19G219-CKB 06/2015 20150930072609

# Table of Contents


## Introduction
About This Manual....7
Symbols Glossary....7
Data Recording....9
Replacement Parts Recommendation....10
Mobile Communications Equipment....10

## At a Glance
At a Glance....11

## Child Safety
Child Seats....17
Booster Seats....18
Child Restraint Positioning....19

## Seatbelts
Principle of Operation....23
Fastening the Seatbelts....23
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....24
Seatbelt Reminder....24

## Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation....26
Disabling the Passenger Airbag....26
Driver and Passenger Airbags....27
Side Airbags....27
Driver Knee Airbag....28
Side Curtain Airbags....28

## Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies....29
Remote Control....29
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....31

## MyKey™
Principle of Operation....32
Creating a MyKey....33
Clearing All MyKeys....33
Checking MyKey System Status....35
MyKey Troubleshooting....36

## Locks
Locking and Unlocking....37

## Security
Passive Anti-Theft System....40
Anti-Theft Alarm....40

## Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....42
Audio Control....42
Voice Control....43
Cruise Control....43
Information Display Control....43

## Wipers and Washers
Windshield Wipers....44
Autowipers....45
Windshield Washers....47

## Lighting
General Information....48
Lighting Control....48
Autolamps....50
Daytime Running Lamps....51
Front Fog Lamps....51
Rear Fog Lamps....51
Headlamp Leveling....52
Direction Indicators....53
Interior Lamps....53
Ambient Lighting....54
Cargo Lamps....54




Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

# Table of Contents


## Windows and Mirrors
Power Windows....55
Global Opening and Closing....57
Exterior Mirrors....58
Interior Mirror....59

## Instrument Cluster
Gauges....60
Warning Lamps and Indicators....62
Audible Warnings and Indicators....66

## Information Displays
General Information....68
Clock....76
Trip Computer....76
Personalized Settings....76
Information Messages....77

## Climate Control
Principle of Operation....90
Air Vents....90
Manual Climate Control....91
Automatic Climate Control....93
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....96
Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
Cabin Air Filter....99

## Seats
Sitting in the Correct Position....100
Head Restraints....100
Manual Seats....102
Power Seats....104
Rear Seats....105

## Auxiliary Power Points
Auxiliary Power Points....107

## Storage Compartments
Cup Holders....109
Glove Box....109
Center Console....110
Overhead Console....110
Rear Seat Armrest....111
Under Seat Storage....111

## Starting and Stopping the Engine
General Information....112
Ignition Switch....112
Steering Wheel Lock....112
Starting a Gasoline Engine....112
Starting a Diesel Engine....113
Diesel Particulate Filter....114
Switching Off the Engine....115

## Unique Driving Characteristics
Auto-Start-Stop....116

## Fuel and Refueling
Safety Precautions....118
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....119
Fuel Quality - Diesel....119
Running Out of Fuel - Diesel....120
Catalytic Converter....120
Refueling....121
Fuel Consumption....122

## Transmission
Manual Transmission....124
Automatic Transmission....124

## Four-Wheel Drive
Principle of Operation....128
Using Four-Wheel Drive....128




Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Rear Axle
Limited Slip Differential....133
Electronic Locking Differential....133

## Brakes
General Information....134
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....134
Parking Brake....135
Hill Start Assist....135

## Traction Control
Principle of Operation....137
Using Traction Control....137

## Stability Control
Principle of Operation....138
Using Stability Control....138

## Terrain Response
Principle of Operation....140
Using Terrain Response....140

## Hill Descent Control
Principle of Operation....142
Using Hill Descent Control....142

## Parking Aids
Principle of Operation....144
Rear Parking Aid....145
Front Parking Aid....146
Rear View Camera....147

## Cruise Control
Principle of Operation....150
Using Cruise Control....150
Using Adaptive Cruise Control....151

## Driving Aids
Speed Limiter....157
Driver Alert....157
Lane Keeping System....159
Steering....163
Pre-Collision Assist....164

## Load Carrying
General Information....168
Luggage Covers....168
Roof Racks and Load Carriers....170
Load Retaining Fixtures....171
Tailgate....174

## Towing
Towing a Trailer....175
Trailer Sway Control....175
Recommended Towing Weights....176
Tow Ball....179
Towing Points....181
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....181

## Driving Hints
Breaking-In....182
Reduced Engine Performance....182
Cold Weather Precautions....182
Driving Through Water....183
Floor Mats....183

## Roadside Emergencies
Hazard Warning Flashers....185
First Aid Kit....185
Warning Triangle....185
Jump Starting the Vehicle....186
Transporting the Vehicle....187

## Fuses
Fuse Box Locations....189
Fuse Specification Chart....191




Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

# Table of Contents


Fuse Specification Chart - Short Wheelbase, Chassis Cab.....220
Changing a Fuse.....242

## Maintenance

General Information.....243
Opening and Closing the Hood.....244
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec-HE (122kW/165PS) - MI4.....245
Under Hood Overview - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel.....247
Under Hood Overview - 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel.....249
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L Duratec-HE (122kW/165PS) - MI4.....251
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel/3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel.....251
Engine Oil Check.....251
Engine Coolant Check.....252
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....253
Power Steering Fluid Check - Vehicles With: Hydraulic Power Assist Steering (HPAS).....253
Washer Fluid Check.....254
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap.....254
Charging the 12V Battery.....254
Changing the 12V Battery.....255
Checking the Wiper Blades.....255
Changing the Wiper Blades.....256
Removing a Headlamp.....256
Changing a Bulb.....256
Bulb Specification Chart.....262
Bulb Specification Chart - Short Wheelbase, Chassis Cab.....263

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....265
Cleaning the Interior.....266
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....266

## Wheels and Tires

General Information.....267
Tire Care.....267
Using Winter Tires.....272
Using Snow Chains.....272
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....272
Changing a Road Wheel.....276
Technical Specifications.....284

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.5L Duratec-HE (122kW/165PS) - MI4.....285
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (88kW/120PS) - Puma.....286
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (92kW/125PS) - Puma.....287
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (96kW/130PS) - Puma.....288
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (110kW/150PS) - Puma.....289
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (118kW/160PS) - Puma.....290
Engine Specifications - 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel.....291
Vehicle Dimensions.....292
Vehicle Dimensions - Short Wheelbase, Chassis Cab.....297
Towbar Dimensions.....299
Vehicle Identification Plate.....302
Vehicle Identification Number.....302
Capacities and Specifications.....303

## Audio System

General Information.....306
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD.....307

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC.....310
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC/Navigation System.....315
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC/Navigation System.....321
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays.....324
Compact Disc Player.....325
Audio Input Jack.....329
USB Port.....330
Media Hub.....330
Audio Troubleshooting.....331

## SYNC™

General Information.....332
Using Voice Recognition.....333
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....336
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....347
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....354

## SYNC™ 2

General Information.....361
Settings.....370
Entertainment.....384
Phone.....393
Information.....401
Climate.....406
Navigation.....408
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....417

## Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....425
End User License Agreement.....426
Type Approvals.....432

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

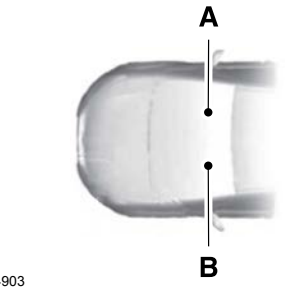
**Note:** *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

**Note:** *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so they may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

**Note:** *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.




E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Safety alert

See Owner's Manual

Air conditioning system

Anti-lock braking system

Avoid smoking, flames or sparks

Battery

Battery acid

Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015


Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten safety belt


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window



Heated windshield


Windshield defroster


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Lighting control


Lock rear window


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Panic alarm


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe


Keep out of reach of children


Recyclable product



Do not dispose of in the trash because the material contains lead


Use safety glasses when handling

## DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

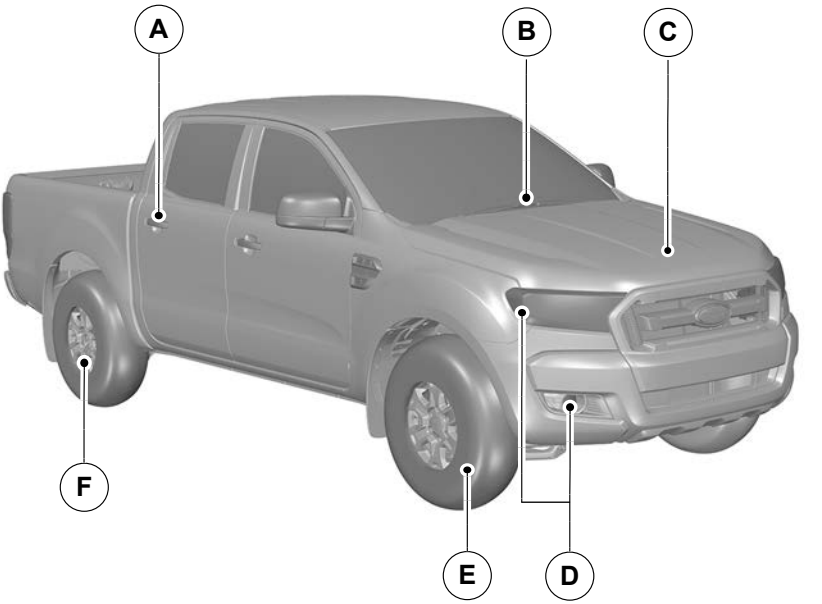
**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Front Exterior Overview



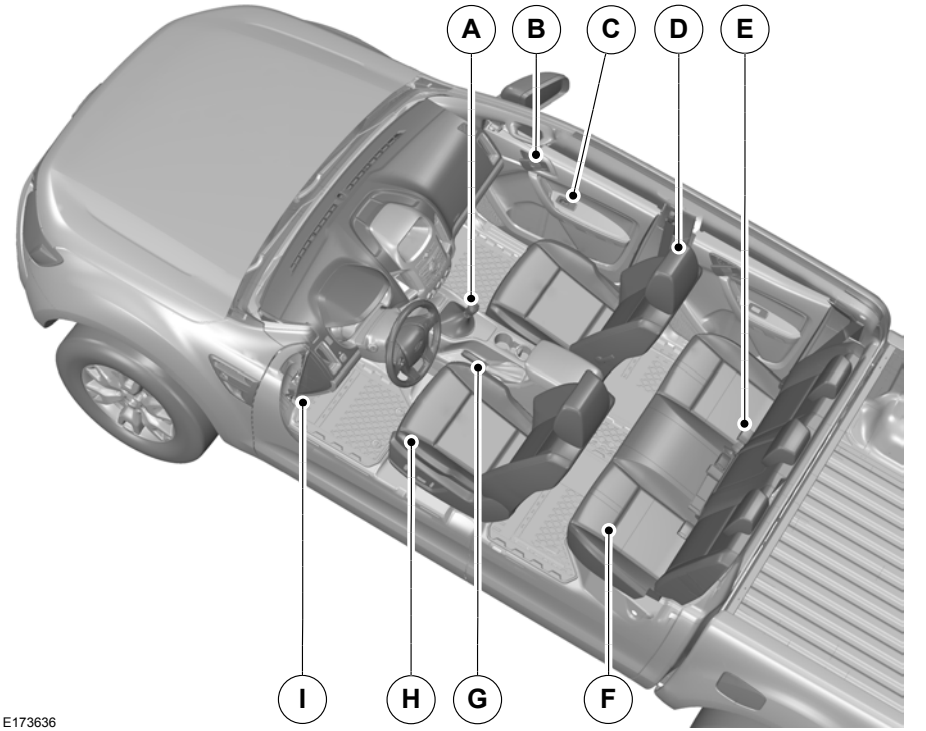

E207760

A See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 37).
B See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 256).
C See **Maintenance** (page 243).
D See **Changing a Bulb** (page 256).
E Tire pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).
F See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 276).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Vehicle Interior Overview




A See **Transmission** (page 124).
B See **Locks** (page 37).
C See **Power Windows** (page 55). See **Exterior Mirrors** (page 58).
D See **Head Restraints** (page 100).
E See **Fastening the Seatbelts** (page 23).
F See **Rear Seats** (page 105).
G See **Parking Brake** (page 135).

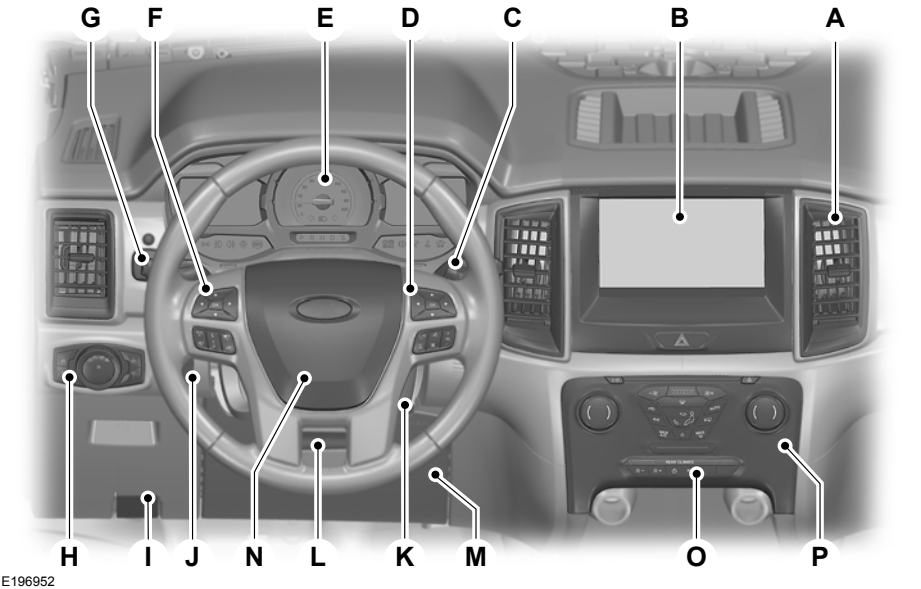


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

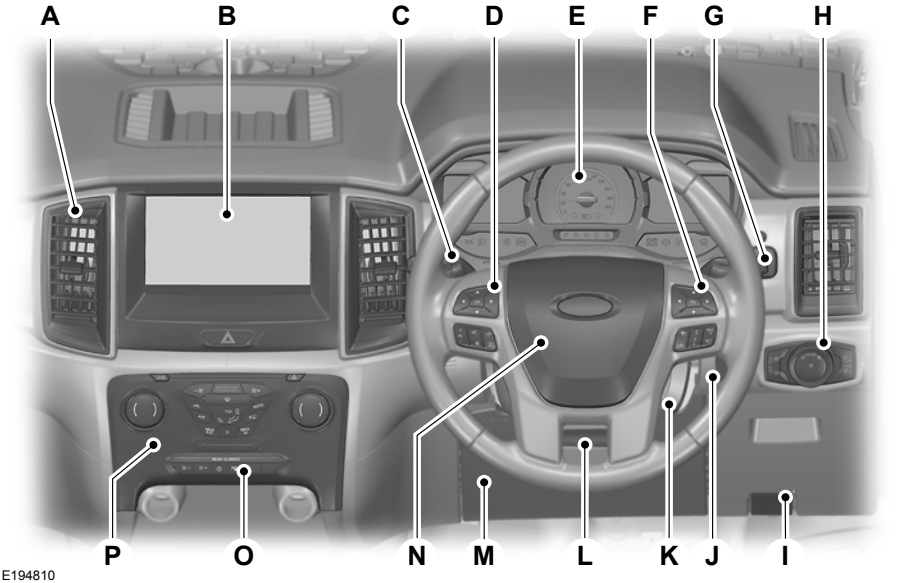
H See **Manual Seats** (page 102). See **Power Seats** (page 104).
I See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 244).

## Instrument Panel Overview

### Left Hand Drive



**Right Hand Drive**




A Air vents.

B Multi-function display. See **General Information** (page 68).

C Windshield wipers. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 44).

D Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 42).

E Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 60). See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 116).

F Cruise control buttons. See **Cruise Control** (page 150). Adaptive cruise control. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 151).

G Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 53). Lane keeping system. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 159).

H Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 48).

I Hood release lever. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 244).

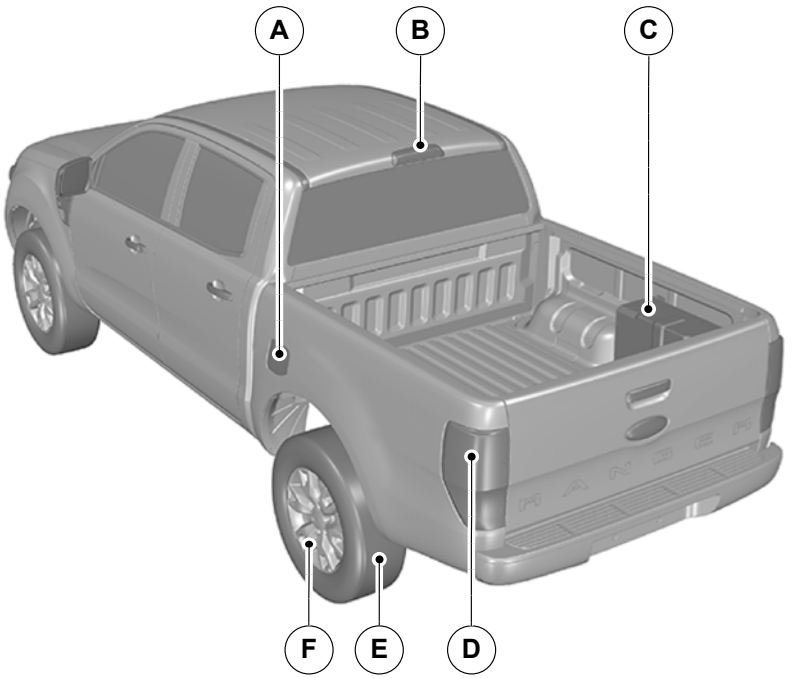
K Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 112).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

L Steering wheel adjustment lever. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 42).
M Knee airbag. See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page 28).
N Horn.
O Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 90).
P Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 306).

## Rear Exterior Overview




A Fuel filler flap. See **Refueling** (page 121).
B See **Changing a Bulb** (page 256).
C Auxiliary battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 255).
D See **Changing a Bulb** (page 256).

E Tire pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).
F See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 276).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## CHILD SEATS



E133140




E68916

**WARNINGS**

Secure children that are less than 150 centimeters (59 inches) tall in a suitable, approved child restraint, in the rear seat.

Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.

Do not modify child restraints in any way.

Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

**WARNINGS**

Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle.

If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, have the child restraints checked by properly trained technicians.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from your Dealer.

### Child restraints for different mass groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

**Baby safety seat**



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 13 kilograms (29 pounds) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) in the rear seat.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Child safety seat



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 13 and 18 kilograms (29 and 40 pounds) in a child safety seat (Group 1) in the rear seat.

## BOOSTER SEATS

**WARNINGS**

Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the safety belt.

Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a safety belt that is slack or twisted.

Do not put the safety belt under your child's arm or behind its back.

Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.

Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

Secure children that weigh more than 15 kilograms (33 pounds) but are less than 150 centimeters (59 inches) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

**CAUTION**

When using a child seat on a rear seat, make sure that the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 100).

### Booster seat (Group 2)



E70710

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.

### Booster cushion (Group 3)



E68924



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

**WARNINGS**

Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor.

When using a child seat with a seat belt, make sure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

**CAUTION**

The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 100).

**Note:** *When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearwards position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seat belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See* ***Seats*** *(page 100).*

| Seating positions | Mass group categories | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 0+ | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| | Up to 10 kg | Up to 13 kg | 9 - 18 kg | 15 - 25 kg | 22 - 36 kg |
| Front outboard passenger seat with airbag **ON** | X | X | UF[1] | UF[1] | UF[1] |
| Front outboard passenger seat with airbag **OFF** | U[1] | U[1] | U[1] | U[1] | U[1] |
| Rear seats | U | U | U | U | U |
| Single cab center seat | X | X | X | X | X |

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

**U[1]** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.

**UF[1]** Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**ISOFIX child seats - Double cab**

| Seating positions | | Mass group categories | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | 0+ | 1 |
| | | Rear facing | Forward facing |
| | | Up to 13 kg | 9 - 18 kg |
| Front seat | Size class | Not ISOFIX equipped | |
| | Seat type | | |
| Rear outboard seat ISOFIX | Size class | E, D, C* | A, B, B1, C, D* |
| | Seat type | IL** | IL, IUF*** |
| Rear centre seat | Size class | Not ISOFIX equipped | |
| | Seat type | | |

**IL** Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the **semi-universal** category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

**IUF** Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of **universal** category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

*The ISOFIX size class for both **universal** and **semi-universal** child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters **A** to **G**. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.

**At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Roemer Baby Safe. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

***At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Roemer Safefix PLUS. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

## ISOFIX Anchor Points

**WARNING**

Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend that you use a top tether or a support leg.

**Note:** *When you are purchasing an ISOFIX restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 19).*

Your vehicle may have fitted with ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

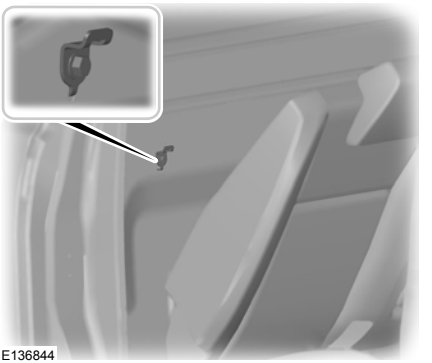
The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the 2nd row seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are fitted to the back panel trim for child restraints with a top tether.

## Attaching a child restraint with a top tether

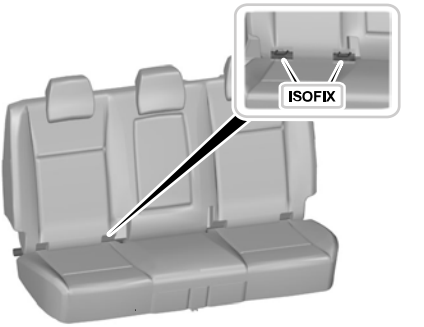
**WARNING**

Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

### Double cab



E136844




E132631

1. Remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 100).
2. Place the child seat on the back seat cushion and fold the relevant seatback forward. See **Rear Seats** (page 105).
3. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.

**WARNING**

Make sure the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

4. Push the seatback to the upright position.

**WARNINGS**

Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

Make sure the safety seat is fitted correctly. There is a risk of injury.

5. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
6. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturers instructions.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

We recommend that you use a tether strap where fitted.

# PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

## Seatbelts

**WARNINGS**

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.

Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.

Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision.

### Seatbelt pretensioners

The driver and front passenger seatbelt systems are fitted with a seatbelt pretensioner.

Seatbelt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags.

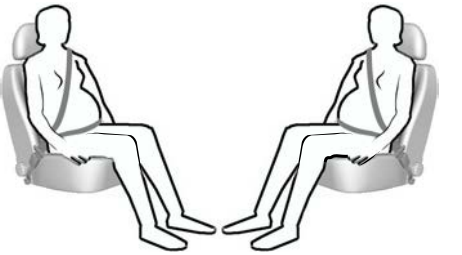
During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seatbelt pretensioners will deploy.

### Status after a collision

**WARNING**

Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

### Using seatbelts during pregnancy



E68587

**WARNING**

Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt.

Position the lap strap comfortably across your hips and low beneath your pregnant abdomen. Position the shoulder strap between your breasts, above and to the side of your pregnant abdomen.

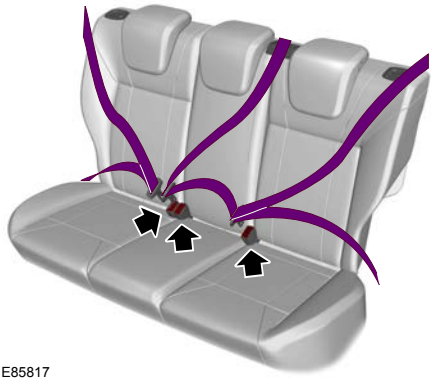
# FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

**WARNING**

Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt properly if you do not hear a click.



E74124

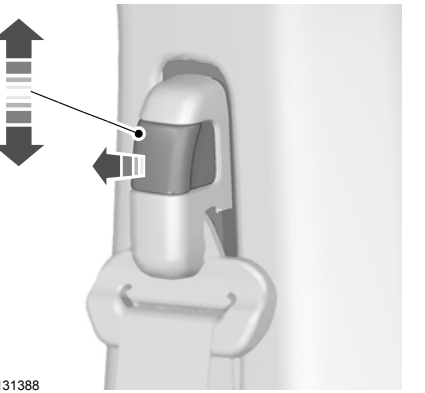


E85817

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT



E131388

To raise or lower, pull the locking button on the adjuster and move as necessary.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

**WARNING**

Do not sit on top of a fastened seatbelt to prevent the seatbelt reminder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seatbelt properly.

The vehicle may be equipped with a seatbelt reminder warning lamp, that appears in the instrument cluster.

The seatbelt reminder warning lamp may be activated in the following situations:

- The seatbelt reminder warning lamp will be illuminated for 6 seconds when the ignition is turned on to remind the driver to fasten the seatbelt.
- The seatbelt reminder warning lamp will be illuminated at any time when the drivers seatbelt is not fastened.
- The seatbelt reminder warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver or front passenger seatbelt has not been fastened and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed. It will also illuminate if either of the seatbelt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving. The audible warning will go off after five minutes but the seatbelt reminder warning lamp will remain on until the seatbelt is fastened.

### Turning the Seatbelt Reminder Off

Contact an authorized dealer.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNINGS**

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 100). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

**Note:** *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

## DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

**WARNING**

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.




E131289

### Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch

**WARNING**

If you need to fit a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it, have a passenger airbag deactivation switch fitted. Ask your dealer for further information.

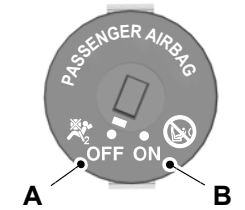


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *The key switch is located in the glove compartment with an airbag deactivation lamp in the instrument panel.*

If the airbag warning lamp illuminates or flashes when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Remove the child restraint and have the system checked immediately.

### Switching the Passenger Airbag Off




E136174

A Disabled

B Enabled

Turn the switch to position **A**.

When you switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag OFF warning lamp illuminates indicating that the passenger airbag is disabled. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

### Switching the Passenger Airbag On

**WARNING**

Make sure that the passenger airbag is enabled when you are **not** using a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Turn the switch to position **B**.

When you switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag ON warning lamp illuminates indicating that the passenger airbag is enabled. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS



E151127

The airbags will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

## SIDE AIRBAGS

**WARNING**

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.




E72658

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. It may also deploy during significant frontal collisions. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. The airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

## DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

**WARNING**

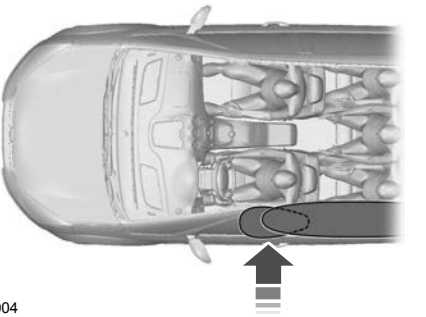
Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

**Note:** *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.*

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The curtain airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

**Note:** *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

**Note:** *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

## REMOTE CONTROL

You can program a maximum of eight remote controls to your vehicle. This includes any you recieved with your vehicle. The remote controls must remain inside your vehicle during the programming procedure. Fasten the front seatbelts and close all doors to make sure that conflicting chimes do not sound during programming.

### Programming a New Remote Control

Contact an authorized dealer.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

**Note:** *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

### Programming the additional key

**Note:** *You need to have two programmed keys for this procedure.*

1. Insert the first key and turn the ignition on.
2. Remove the key within 10 seconds.
3. Insert the second key within 10 seconds and turn the ignition on.
4. Remove the key within 10 seconds.
5. Insert the additional key within 10 seconds.



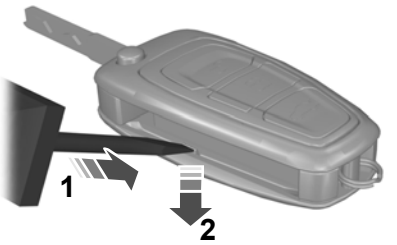
Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Changing the Remote Control Battery

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

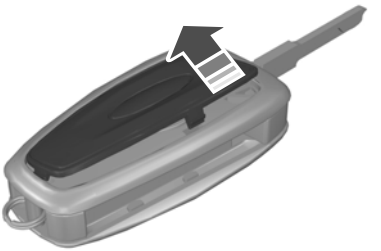
### Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade - Type 1

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



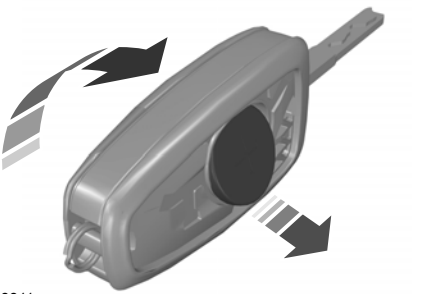

E128809

1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



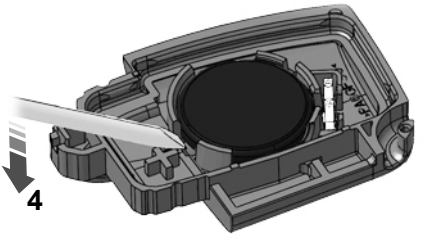
E128810

3. Carefully remove the cover.



E128811

4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.




E126280

**Note:** *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
6. Reinstall the battery cover.

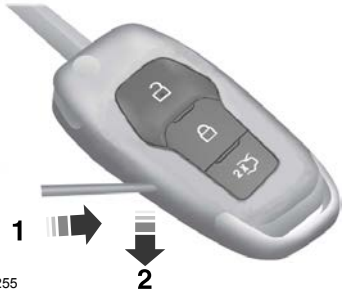
### Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade - Type 2

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



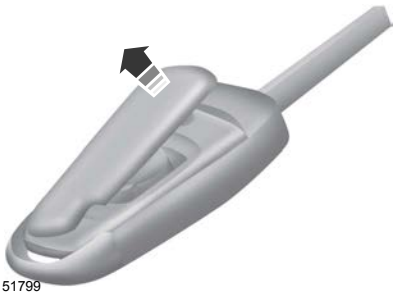
E168254

1. Press the button to release the key before beginning the procedure.




E168255

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
3. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



E151799

4. Carefully remove the cover.



E151800

**Note:** *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.



E151801

6. Remove the old battery.
7. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
8. Reinstall the battery cover.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 40).

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

**Note:** *Switch the vehicle on to use the system.*

**Note:** *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

### Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an MyKey key user:

- Seatbelt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' seatbelts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel or charge. The low-fuel or low charge warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel or recharge.
- Driver assist features are forced on: parking aid and Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions.

### Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an MyKey key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

**WARNING**

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to switch off AdvanceTrac™ or traction control, 911 Assist or Emergency Assistance, or the do not disturb feature.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

| Message | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key. |
| MyKey | Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key. |
| Create MyKey | Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key. |

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

### Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or remote control.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

| Message | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key. |
| MyKey | Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key. |

**Note:** *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 68).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or remote control.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

| Message | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the **OK** button. |
| MyKey | Press the **OK** button. |
| Clear MyKey | Press and hold the **OK** button until the following message displays. |
| All MyKeys<br>Cleared | |

**Note:** *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 68).

**To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the **OK** button. |
| MyKey | Press the **OK** button. |
| **Select one of the following:** | |
| MyKey Dist. | Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey. |
| {0} MyKeys | Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted. |
| {0} Admin Keys | Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

| Condition | Potential Causes |
|---|---|
| I cannot create a MyKey. | • The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges.<br>• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).<br>• SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode. |
| I cannot program the configurable settings. | • The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.<br>• No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 33). |
| I cannot clear the MyKeys. | • The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.<br>• No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 33). |
| I lost the only admin key. | Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer. |
| I lost a key. | Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 40). |
| MyKey distances do not accumulate. | • The MyKey user is not using the MyKey.<br>• An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys.<br>• The key system has been reset. |

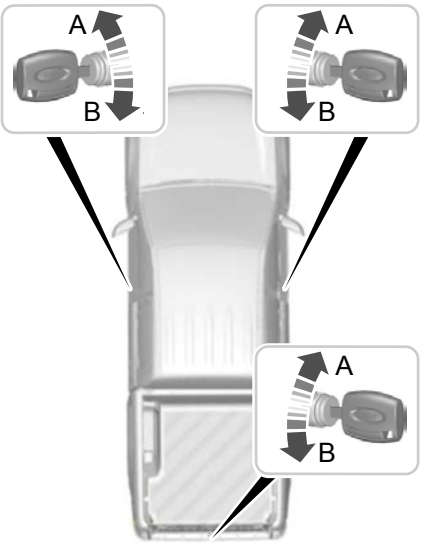


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

**Note:** *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### Locking and unlocking the doors with the key




E131447

A Unlock.

B Lock.

**Note:** *To **double lock** the doors, turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.*

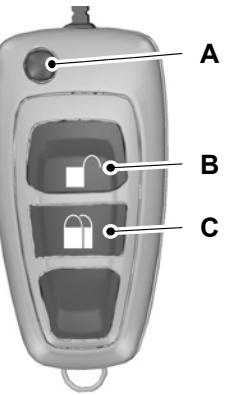
**Note:** *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock.*

**Note:** *When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

**Note:** *All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the driver or front passenger door panels.*

### Locking and unlocking the doors with the remote control

**Automatic relocking:** The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.




E131278

A Key fold/unfold button.

B Unlock.

C Lock.

Press the button **B** once to unlock the vehicle.

Press the button **C** once to activate central locking.

**Note:** *Central locking is activated only when all the passenger doors are closed.*

Press the button **C** twice within four seconds to double lock the doors.

**Note:** *Double locking is activated only when all the passenger doors are closed and the bonnet is closed in the vehicle fitted with alarm.*

**WARNING**

Do not activate double locking when persons or animals are inside the vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from inside if you have double locked them.

**Note:** *If the ignition is switched on with the double locking function activated, the lock will automatically return to single lock stage.*

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

**Note:** *The driver's door can be unlocked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.*

**Note:** *If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the remote control will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting the vehicle once will enable the remote control.*

### Reprogramming the unlocking function

The unlocking function may be reprogrammed so that only the driver's door is unlocked.

### Locking and unlocking confirmation

**Note:** *When you lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.*

*When you double lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash twice. When you unlock the doors the direction indicators will flash one long flash.*

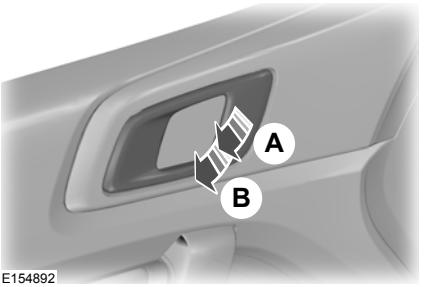
## Child play protection function

If the remote control buttons are pressed continuously several times, the locking and unlocking function will be blocked for a while to avoid door latches from overheating.

## Locking and unlocking the doors from inside



Press the button. For item location. See **At a Glance** (page 11).




A Unlock.
B Open.

## Driver configuration mode

**Note:** *This operation has to be done within **30 seconds**.*

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press door lock button three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press door lock button three times.
5. Switch the ignition on.
6. Press door lock button two times.

The system will chirp twice to indicate that the driver configuration mode is enabled.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Once in driver configuration mode, follow the steps mentioned below to toggle the status of the automatic locking by speed or automatic unlocking.

**Automatic locking by speed**

**Note:** *Automatic locking by speed is default disabled.*

*All the doors will lock automatically when the vehicle is driven at or above 7 km/h.*

Press the central lock or unlock button twice within three seconds and wait for three seconds to toggle the automatic locking by speed function. The system will chirp when toggling.

**Automatic unlocking**

**Note:** *Automatic unlock is default enabled.*

Press the central lock or unlock button three time within three seconds and wait for three seconds to toggle the automatic unlocking function.

If the automatic unlocking function is enabled:

- All doors will be unlocked while opening the driver door or front passenger door (vehicles not delivered with remote control) from inside, with the key in ignition.

If the automatic unlocking function is disabled:

- Only the respective door will be unlocked while opening from inside.

**Note:** *Opening the rear doors will never unlock the other doors, when opened from inside.*

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can purchase a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

### Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

### Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM

### Alarm System

Your vehicle may have one or more of the following alarm systems:

- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.
- Inclination or motion sensor to set off the alarm if the vehicle is moved or raised.

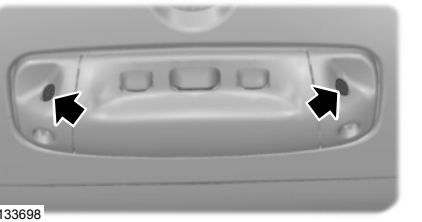
#### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors, luggage compartment and the hood.

#### Panic Alarm

The alarm can be activated using the remote control.

#### Interior Sensors


E133698

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

Arming the alarm turns on the interior sensors.

**Note:** *Do not cover the interior lamp scanning sensors.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle, as this could trigger the alarm.*

**Note:** *Do not leave the glasses holder open.*

**Note:** *To permanently switch off the interior motion sensor, see an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Fuel fired heater may trigger false alarms.*

### Inclination/ Motion Sensor

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

## Triggering the Alarm

- If someone opens a door or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the multi-function display.
- If you switch the ignition on without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm sounds, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning lamps flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above will sound the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle, as this could trigger the alarm.*

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only.*

### Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

You can switch this feature on or off and adjust the settings using the information display.

**Note:** *You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only.*

*The alarm resets to full guard the next time you unlock and then relock the vehicle with the remote control.*

## Arming the Alarm

Press the lock button once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm.

## Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors with the key and switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds.
- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment using the remote control.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

**WARNING**

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 100).*




E161488

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



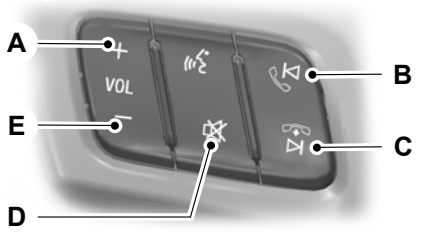

E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

## AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:




E199065

A Volume up.

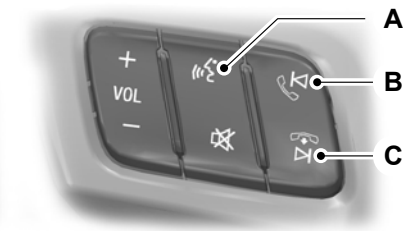
B Seek down or previous.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

C Seek up or next.
D Mute.
E Volume down.

## VOICE CONTROL

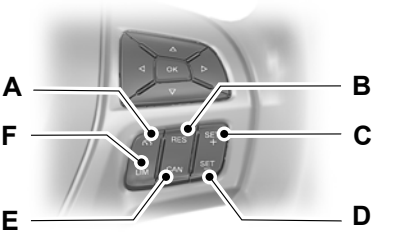



E200787

A Press the button to switch on or off the voice control.
B Press the button to accept phone call.
C Press the button to end phone call.

See **SYNC™** (page 332).

## CRUISE CONTROL




E200943

A Cruise control On and off.
B Resume.
C Set speed increase.
D Set speed decrease.
E Cancel.
F Speed limiter on and off.

## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL




E201420

See **General Information** (page 68).

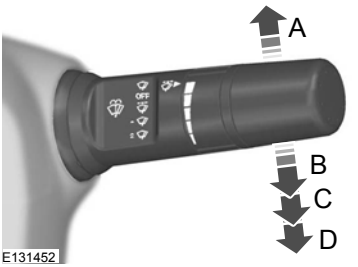


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

**Note:** *Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.*

### Type 1




A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe or autowipers.
C Normal wipe.
D High speed wipe.

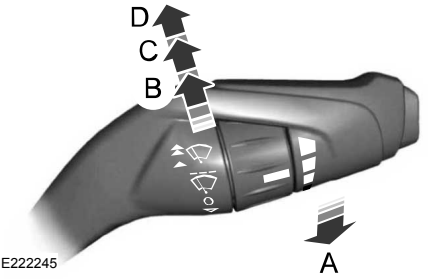
### Type 2

**Note:** *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

**Note:** *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and vehicle power off before using an automatic car wash.*

**Note:** *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

*See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 255).*
**Note:** *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield.This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*




A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

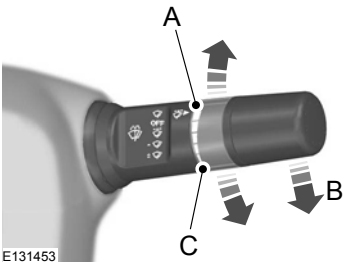
**Note:** *Move to position **O** marked on the wiper lever to switch off.*

**Note:** *Switch the windshield wipers off before switching the ignition off. Otherwise, the wipers will stop at the current operating position.*

### Intermittent Wipe

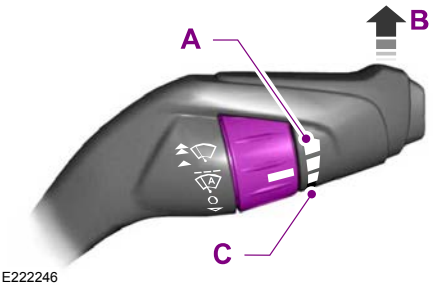
**Note:** *Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.*

**Type 1**




A Long wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Short wipe interval.

**Type 2**




A Short-wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Long-wipe interval.

Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on. Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

***Speed Dependent Wipers***

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

## AUTOWIPERS

**Type 1**

**Note:** *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

**Note:** *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

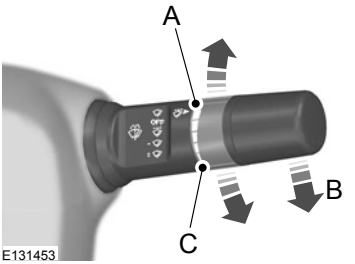
**Note:** *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

**Note:** *During wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or a salty road mist, inconsistent or unexpected wiping or smearing may occur.*

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.

**Note:** *Make sure the wiper is switched off before switching the ignition off. Otherwise, the wipers will stop at the current operating position.*




A High sensitivity.

B On.

C Low sensitivity.

Autowipers uses a rain sensor located in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers will operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of water on the windshield and automatically adjust the speed of the wipers.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

### Type 2

**Note:** *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

**Note:** *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

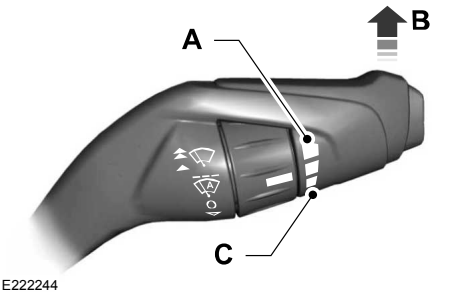
**Note:** *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

**Note:** *During wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or a salty road mist, inconsistent or unexpected wiping or smearing may occur.*

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.

**Note:** *Make sure the wiper is switched off before switching the ignition off. Otherwise, the wipers will stop at the current operating position.*




A High sensitivity.

B On.

C Low sensitivity.

Autowipers uses a rain sensor located in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers will operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of water on the windshield and automatically adjust the speed of the wipers.

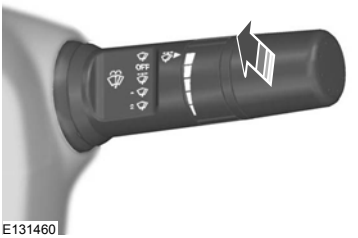
Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

### Type 1

**Note:** *Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.*



E131460

**Note:** *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty.*

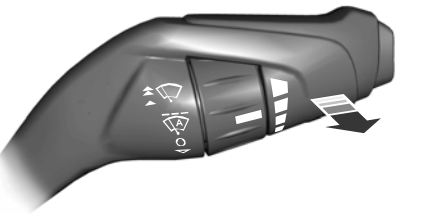
Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. The wiper will be activated within a second.

In order to reduce water usage, the washer is functioned to stop after operating continuously for 10 seconds. Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers.

### Type 2

**Note:** *Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.*

**Note:** *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*


E222247

**Note:** *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty.*

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. The wiper will be activated within a second.

In order to reduce water usage, the washer is functioned to stop after operating continuously for 10 seconds. Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

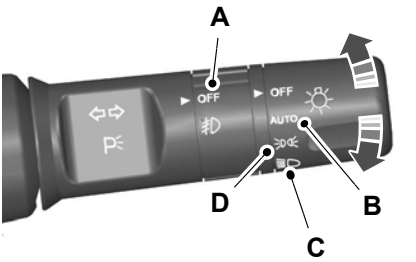
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL

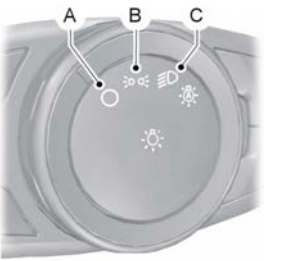
### Type 1




E139254

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Off. |
| B | Auto-light control. |
| C | Headlamps. |
| D | Position lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps. |

### Type 2




E142449

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Off. |
| B | Position lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps. |
| C | Headlamps. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

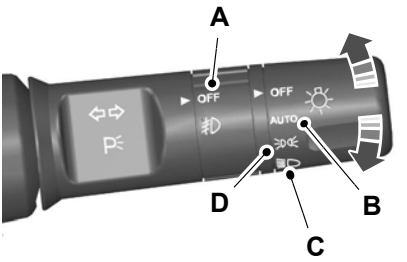
## Position Lamps

**WARNING**

Prolonged use of the position lamps when the ignition is off will cause the battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** *Switch on the position lamp within 10 minutes from the key out, reinsert the key if exceeded.*

### Type 1




E139254

Select position **D** on the lighting controls to switch the position lamps on. The position lamps operate with the ignition on or off.

### Type 2




E142449

Select position **B** on the lighting controls to switch the position lamps on. The position lamps operate with the ignition on or off.

## Parking Lamps

**WARNING**

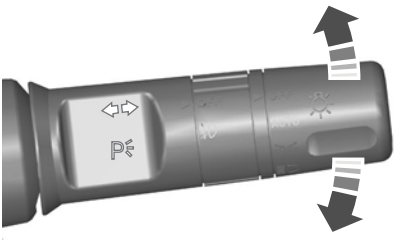
Prolonged use of the parking lamps when the ignition is off will cause the battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** *Switch on the parking lamp within 10 minutes from the key out, reinsert the key if exceeded.*

**Note:** *The parking lamps are a feature of the position lamps that uses the direction indicator to illuminate a single desired position lamp.*

### Type 1

Select position **D** on the lighting controls to switch the parking lamps on. The parking lamps operate with the ignition on or off.



E212053

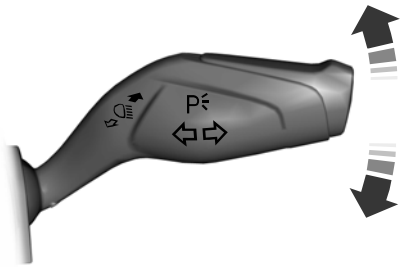
Move the lever up or down to switch on the desired parking lamp.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Type 2**

Select position **B** on the lighting controls to switch the parking lamps on. The parking lamps operate with the ignition on or off.



E211866

Move the lever up or down to switch on the desired parking lamp.

### Headlamp Low and High Beam

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

#### Headlamp Flasher

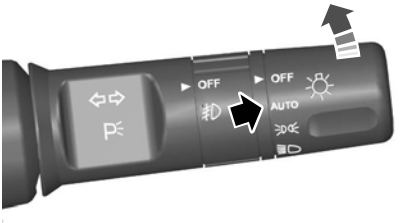
Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS

**WARNING**

The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

**Type 1**




E139256

**Type 2**



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers turn on.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 68).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

**WARNING**

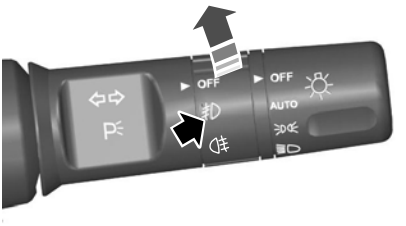
Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS

**Type 1**




E205677

**Type 2**




E132709

Press the button to switch the fog lamps on or off.

Rotate the control lever to switch the fog lamps on or off.

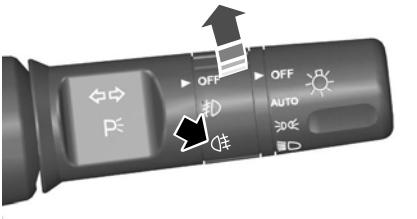
You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

**Note:** *Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example fog, snow or heavy rain.*

**Note:** *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the front fog lamps on when the headlamps are on.*

## REAR FOG LAMPS

**Type 1**




E205678

Rotate the control lever to switch the fog lamps on or off.

**Type 2**




E132710

Press the button to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the front fog lamps or the headlamps are on.

**Note:** *Use the rear fog lamps only when visibility is less than 50 m.*

**Note:** *Do not switch on the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing.*

**Note:** *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam headlamps on when the autolamps turn the headlamps on.*

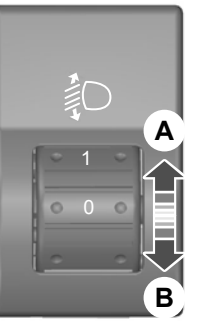
## HEADLAMP LEVELING

Headlamp leveling is provided to avoid glare for other road users when the vehicle is loaded in a number of different conditions.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:

**Type 1**




E133544

A Raise headlamp beams.

B Lower headlamp beams.

**Type 2**




E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control to the required setting.
3. Press to close the control.

### Headlamp Leveling to Suit Vehicle Load

| | |
|---|---|
| | 0 |
| | 0 |
| | 1 |
| | 1 |
| | 2 |
| | 3 |

E206726

Set the headlamp leveling to the corresponding switch setting, depending on the vehicles loading condition.

Set the headlamp leveling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



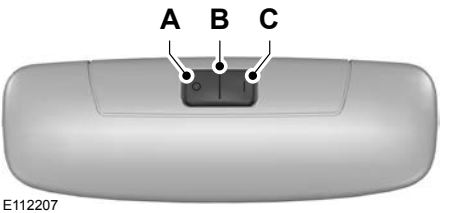
E169255

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Courtesy lamp




E112207

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Off. |
| B | Door contact. |
| C | On. |

If you set the switch to position **B**, the courtesy lamp will come on when you unlock or open a door. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

The courtesy lamp will also come on when you switch off the ignition. It will go off automatically after a short time or when you start or restart the engine.

If you set the switch to position **C** with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will come on. It will go off automatically after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

### Reading lamps



E112208

If you switch off the ignition, the reading lamps will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

Adjust the ambient lighting using the touchscreen.

## CARGO LAMPS

The cargo lamp is located above the load compartment.

Operation of the cargo lamp is only possible when the vehicle is stationary (automatic transmission must be in park (P), park brake must be applied for manual transmission) and either of the following conditions are met:

- The driver or passenger door is open.
- The engine is off (ignition in the Off or Acc. Position).



E224576

**Note:** *The cargo lamp operates on a timer and will turn off when the timer runs out or when one of the conditions are no longer met.*

Once the conditions are met the cargo lamp will turn on automatically.

If the conditions are met and the timer runs out the cargo lamp can be activated by pressing the switch. The cargo lamp cannot be turned off by pressing the switch.

## POWER WINDOWS

**WARNINGS**

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

If the vehicle is to be left unsupervised, the vehicle key should be taken to ensure that the windows are not operated inadvertently.

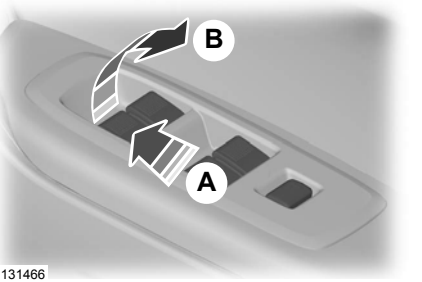
When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

**Note:** *If you operate the switches often during a short period of time the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

**Note:** *If you operate both the switch on the relevant door and the switch for that window on the driver's door at the same time, the window will stop moving.*

**Note:** *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows are open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

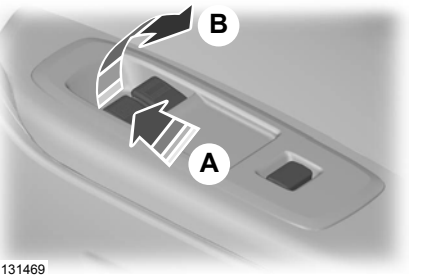
### Driver's Door Switches (Double Cab)




A Press the switch to open the window.

B Lift the switch to close the window.

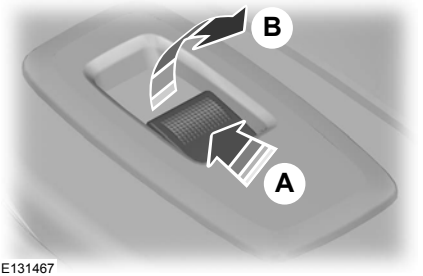
### Driver's Door Switches (Single and Stretch Cab)




A Press the switch to open the window.

B Lift the switch to close the window.

### Front and Rear Passengers' Door Switches



E131467

A Press the switch to open the window.

B Lift the switch to close the window.

### Opening and Closing the Driver Side Window Automatically

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it.

Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Opening and Closing Other Windows Automatically

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it.

Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Safety Switch for the Rear Windows

**Note:** *You can always operate the rear windows and front passenger window from the driver's door if global opening and closing is fitted.*

**Note:** *In vehicles without global opening and closing, the rear windows cannot be operated from driver side when the safety switch is pressed. In certain vehicles front passenger windows cannot be operated as well.*


E131468

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls.

### Resetting the Memory of the Electric Windows - Vehicle with One Touch Up/Down on Driver Side only

**WARNING**

The bounce back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

In the event of a flat battery or after the battery has been disconnected from the vehicle, you must reset the memory for driver window.

1. Open the window and then try to close using the one-touch feature.
2. Lift and hold the switch to second action point until the window is fully closed.
3. Hold the switch lifted for more than two seconds and release.
4. Open the window using the first action point and try to close it automatically using second action point.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

5. If the window does not open or close automatically when the switch is pressed or lifted to second action points, repeat the procedure.

### Safety Mode

**WARNING**

The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure.

If the system detects a malfunction, it enters a safety mode. The windows will move for only about 0.5 seconds at a time and then stop again. Close the windows by pressing the switch again when the windows stop moving.

Contact an authorized dealer.

### Bounce-Back

The window will automatically stop and reverse some distance if it detects an obstacle while closing.

#### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

**WARNING**

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance.
3. The bounce-back feature is now disabled and you can close the window manually
4. The window will go past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

See an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

#### Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

**WARNING**

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

**Note:** *You can enable or disable this feature in the information display or see an authorized dealer. See* ***General Information*** *(page 68).*

**Note:** *To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Opening the Windows

You can only open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows and vent the moonroof. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

### Closing the Windows

**WARNING**

When closing the windows and moonroof, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

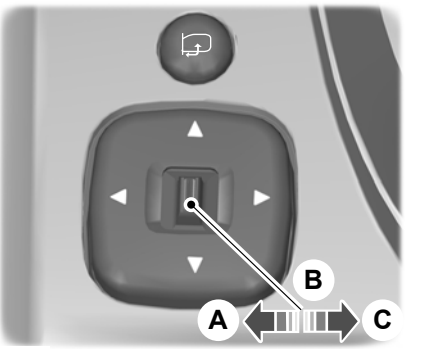
To close the windows and moonroof, press and hold the remote control lock button. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

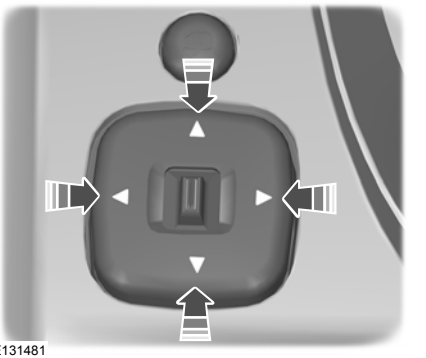
**WARNING**

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E131480

A Left-hand side.
B Off.
C Right-hand side.


E131481

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

### Heated Exterior Mirrors

The heated exterior mirrors will remove ice, mist and fog. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).

### Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

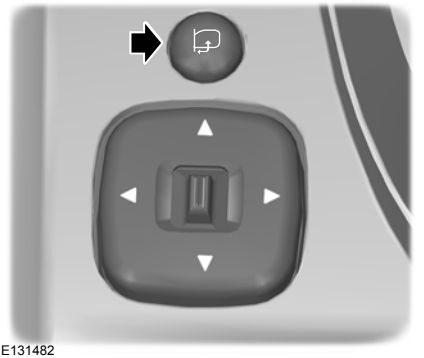
Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

### Power-Folding Mirrors

The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *The mirrors no longer operate if you switch the ignition off and open a door.*



E131482

Press the button to fold the mirrors inward.

Release the button to stop and reverse the direction of movement, or to fold the mirrors outward.

## INTERIOR MIRROR

**WARNING**

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

### Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

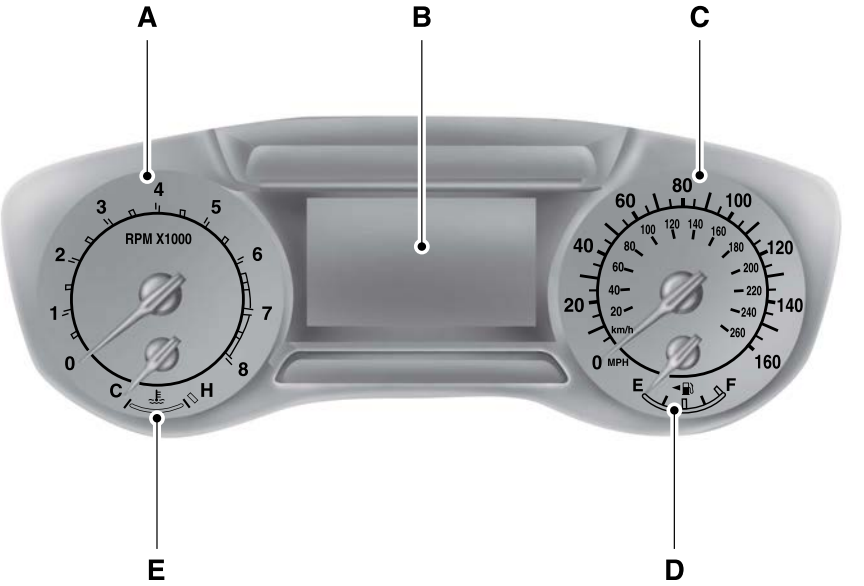
The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GAUGES

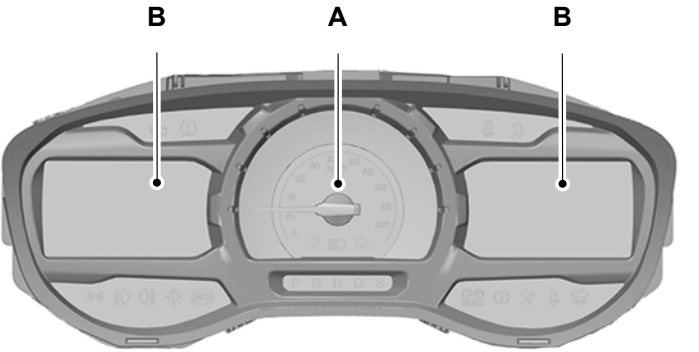
### Type 1




E144485

A Tachograph.
B Multi-function display.
C Speedometer.
D Fuel gauge.
E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

## Type 2




E205854

A Speedometer.
B Multi-function display.

**Note:** *In the design and manufacture of instrumentation, Ford comply with the government regulations that the indicated value of the speedometer is not less than the actual speed. In normal operation, customers may be observed by other instruments (such as a GPS Unit) that the indicated speed is slightly faster than the actual vehicle speed. This is normal and does not represent an instrument malfunction.*

### Information Display

#### Odometer

Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

#### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

#### Compass

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

#### Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 68).

#### Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 68).

### Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down.

**Note:** *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

**WARNING**

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

### Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach **F** after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

#### Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at approximately 1/16th.

**Variations:**

| Driving type (fuel economy conditions) | Fuel gauge position | Distance-to-empty |
|---|---|---|
| Highway driving | 1/16th | 56–129 km |
| Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle) | 1/16th | 56 km |

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle specification, some warning lamps and indicators may not be active.*

### Adaptive Cruise Control Lamp



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See **Using Cruise Control** (page 150).

On (white light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp




If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

### Automatic High Beam Lamp



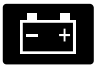

It will illuminate when this feature is on. See **Autolamps** (page 50).

### Auto Start-Stop Lamp




It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

### Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

### Blind Spot Monitor Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Information Messages** (page 77).

### Brake System Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

**WARNING**

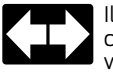
Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

### Cruise Control Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 150).

### Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 256).

### Door Ajar Indicator



It will illuminate when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

### Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the engine or motor coolant temperature is high. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible and contact your authorized dealer.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Engine Oil Warning Lamp

**WARNING**

If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.

If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level.

### Electronic Locking Differential

Illuminates when using the electronic locking differential.

### Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 24).

### Four-Wheel Drive Indicators

4L Illuminates when four-wheel drive low is engaged.

4H Illuminates when four-wheel drive high is engaged.

### Front Airbag Warning Lamp

If the warning lamp does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

### Front Fog Lamps Indicator

It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

### Frost Warning Lamp

**WARNING**

Even if the temperature rises to above 4ºC there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 4ºC or below.

### Glow Plug Indicator

With the key in the on position, illuminates when the glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting.

After you start the engine, the light should turn off. When the engine is cold, the light should always illuminate for a short period.

### High Beam Indicator

It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

### Hill Descent Control

Illuminates when hill descent control is switched on.

### Hood Ajar Warning Lamp

It will illuminate when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Lane Keeping Aid Indicator



It will illuminate when you activate the lane keeping system.

### Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

### Low Tire Pressure Warning



Will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### Low Washer Fluid



It illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

### Over Speed Warning




It will illuminate if the vehicle exceeds 120km/h.

### Parking Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

### Powertrain Fault



It will illuminate when a powertrain or a four-wheel drive fault has been detected. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

### Fasten Rear Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to signal the rear seatbelts are not buckled.

### Service Engine Soon



The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb.If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced.

**WARNING**

Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

If the light is blinking, an engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

### Shift Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

### Speed Limiter




It will illuminate when you switch on the speed limiter system. See **Speed Limiter** (page 157).

### Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 138).

### Stability Control Off Indicator




It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 138).

### Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 254).

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the audible warnings and indicators will display or be available.*

### Key in Ignition

Sounds when the driver door is open and the key is in the ignition.

### Headlamps On

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Parking Brake On

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

### Door Ajar

Sounds when the driver door is ajar, or when any door is ajar while the vehicle is travelling over 5 km/h.

### Seatbelt Reminder

Sounds when a seatbelt is unfastened in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Lane Departure Warning

Sounds when the system detects unintentional drifting toward the outside of the lane and alerts or aids you to stay in the lane through the steering system and instrument cluster display.

### Front and Rear Park Aid

Sounds to alert driver of objects approaching the front and rear of the vehicle while moving forward or reversing.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

### Information Display

#### Type 1




E201432

### Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

| Trip 1 and 2 |
|---|
| Digital Speedometer |
| Distance to Empty |
| Trip odometer |
| Trip Timer |
| Fuel used |
| Average Fuel |
| Outside temp |
| All values |

**Note:** *Press and hold* ***OK*** *on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and fuel information.*

| Fuel economy |
|---|
| Distance to E |
| Instantaneous Fuel |
| Average Fuel |
| Fuel History |
| Average Speed |
| All values |
| Auto StartStop |

**Note:** *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand side of the steering wheel controls.*

| Driver Assist | |
|---|---|
| Traction Control | |
| Hill Start | |
| Front Park Aid | |
| Rear Park Aid | |
| Tire Monitor | Tire Press. |
| Trailer Sway | |

| Settings | | |
|---|---|---|
| Vehicle | Alarm | All Sensors |
| | | Perim. Sens. |
| | | Ask on exit |
| | A. Engine Off | |
| | Chimes | Park Slot |
| | | Information |
| | Lighting | Auto Beam |

| Settings | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | A/lamp Dlay | Off |
| | | | XX Seconds |
| | | DRL | |
| | Locks | Autolock | |
| | | Autounlock | |
| | | Relock | |
| | | Mislock | |
| | | Unlocking | All Doors |
| | | | Driver Door |
| | | Switches Inh. | |
| | Power Mirror | Autofold | |
| | | Reverse Tilt | |
| | Oil Life Reset | Hold OK to Reset Oil Life | |
| | Seatbelts | | |
| | Silent Mode | | |
| | Windows | Remote Open | |
| | | Rmt Close | |
| | Wipers | Crtesy wipe | |
| | | Rain Sensing | |
| | | Rev. Wiper | |
| Display | Distance Unit | Miles & Gallons | |
| | | L/100km | |
| | | km/L | |
| | Temper-ature | Fahrenh. (°F) | |
| | | Celsius (°C) | |

| Settings | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Tire Pressure | psi |
| | | kPa |
| | | bar |
| | Language | Choose your applicable setting |
| MyKey | Admin Keys | "Num" MyKeys |
| | | "Odo" MyKey km |
| | | "Num" Admin Keys |
| | | MyKey Dist |
| | | Odo Units |
| | Create | - |
| | Traction Ctrl | Always On |
| | | Selectable |
| | Max Speed | Speed selectable based on Region |
| | | Off |
| | Speed Minder | Speed selectable based on Region |
| | | Off |
| | Volume Limit | Set |
| | Clear All | Clear |

## Information Display

### Type 2



E201433

### Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

| Display Setup | | |
|---|---|---|
| Distance Unit | | Miles & Gallons |
| | | L/100km |
| | | Km/L |
| Temperature | °Fahrenheit | |
| | °Celsius | |
| Gauge Display | Fuel Gauge | |
| | Fuel + Tach | |
| Tire Pressure | | |

| Trip 1 and 2 | |
|---|---|
| All values | All Values — shows all trip values (Trip Timer, Odometer and Average Fuel). |

**Note:** *You can reset your trip information by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

| Fuel Economy |
| --- |
| Fuel Economy |
| Fuel History |
| Average Speed |
| Auto StartStop |

- Instant Fuel Economy - shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.
- Fuel History - shows a bar chart of your fuel history.
- Average Speed - shows your vehicles average speed since the function was last reset.
- Auto-Start-Stop - available Auto-Start-Stop messaging will provide details about what is happening with your system. See **Information Messages** (page 77).

**Note:** *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

| Driver Assist | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Blindspot | | |
| Cruise Control | Adaptive | |
| | Normal | |
| Driver Alert | Driver Alert | |
| | Display | |
| Hill Start | | |
| Lane Keeping Sys | Mode | Alert Only |
| | | Aid Only |
| | | Both |
| | Intensity | High |
| | | Normal |
| | | Low |
| Front Park Aid | | |
| Rear Park Aid | | |
| Chimes | | |

| Driver Assist | | |
|---|---|---|
| Traffic Signs | Display | |
| | Always Shown | |
| | Speed Warning | Limits up to 65km/h or Limits above 65km/h |
| | | Chimes |
| Tire Monitor | Tire Press. | |
| Trailer Sway | | |

| Settings | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicle | Alarm | All Sensors Active | |
| | | Perimeter Sensing | |
| | | Ask on Exit | |
| | Auto Engine Off | | |
| | Chimes | Park Slot Found | |
| | | Information | |
| | Easy Entry/Exit | | |
| | Lighting | Auto Highbeam | |
| | | Autolamp Delay | Off |
| | | | XX Seconds |
| | | Daytime Lights | |
| | Locks | Autolock | |
| | | Autounlock | |
| | | Relock | |
| | | Mislock | |
| | | Remote Unlock | All Doors |
| | | | Driver's Door |
| | | Switch Inhibit | |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Settings | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Mirrors | Autofold |
| | Oil Life Reset | Hold OK to Reset |
| | Park Lock Control | |
| | Seatbelts | |
| | Windows | Remote Open |
| | | Remote Close |
| | Wipers | Courtesy Wipe |
| | | Rain Sensing |
| | | Reverse Wiper |
| Display Setup | Distance | Miles & Gallons |
| | | L/100km |
| | | Km/L |
| | Temperature | ºFahrenheit |
| | | ºCelsius |
| | Tire Pressure | Choose your applicable setting |
| MyKey | {0} Admin Keys | "Num" MyKeys |
| | | "Odo" MyKey km |
| | | "Num" Admin Keys |
| | | MyKey Dist |
| | | Odo Units |
| | Create MyKey | - |
| | Traction Control | Always On |
| | | Selectable |
| | Max Speed | Speed selectable based on Region |
| | | Off |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Settings | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Speed Minder | Speed selectable based on Region |
| | | Off |
| | Volume Limiter | Set |
| | Clear MyKeys | Hold OK to Clear MyKeys |

## CLOCK

For detailed instructions on how to adjust the clock See **Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays** (page 324).

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

### Instantaneous fuel consumption

Indicates the current average fuel consumption.

### Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

### Trip Odometer

Records the distance traveled on individual journeys.

### Digital Speedometer

The speed your vehicle is traveling at will display as a digital number.

### Average Speed

Indicates the average speed since the function was last reset.

### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

### Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

### Resetting the trip computer

To reset a particular display:

1. Highlight **Trip Computer** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight the function to be reset.
3. Hold the **OK** button pressed.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### Languages

A selection of languages are available using the menus in the setting menu.

### Measure units

To toggle between either metric or imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Toggling the units of measure using this display will affect the following displays:

- Distance to empty.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption.
- Average speed.

### Temperature units

To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Toggling the temperature units using this display will affect the following displays:

- Outside air temperature.
- The temperature display in the automatic climate control.

### Chime deactivation

The following chimes can be switched off:

- Warning messages.
- Information messages.

### MyKey

MyKey is a feature which allows customers to assign keys which will enable extra safety features designed for use by young drivers. Features can be adjusted and customized to suit the level of driver. Features include:

- Muted audio when seatbelts are unbuckled.
- Vehicle speed limited.
- Speed minder.
- Volume limiter on audio system.
- Fuel warnings given at higher distance to empty values.
- Prevention of turning off some driver assist systems:
  - Traction control
  - Park aid
  - Collision Warning System - additionally uses maximum sensitivity as default
  - Emergency assist
  - Do not disturb
- Mileage logged by MyKeys.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** *Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.*




E201420

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Active Park

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Active Park Fault | Displayed when the system needs service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |

## Adaptive Cruise Control

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Adaptive Cruise Malfunction | Displayed when a radar malfunction is preventing the ACC from engaging. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 151). |
| Adaptive Cruise Not Available | Displayed when conditions exist such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 151). |
| Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual | Displayed when the radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 151). |
| Normal Cruise Active Automatic Braking Turned Off | Displayed when the automatic braking has been disabled. |
| Front Sensor Not Aligned | Displayed when a radar malfunction is preventing the ACC from engaging. |
| Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control | Displayed when the adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver. |
| Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate | Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise. |
| Adaptive Cruise Shift Down | Displays when the adaptive cruise is automatically adjusting the gap distance and the driver needs to shift the transmission into a lower gear. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Airbag

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat | Displays when the system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor. |

## Alarm

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle. | Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 40). |

## Auto-Start-Stop

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Auto StartStop Manual Restart Required | Displayed when Auto-Start-Stop system is not functioning and requires the user to manually restart. |
| Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine | Displayed when a pedal needs to be pressed to restart the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 116). |
| Auto StartStop Select Neutral To Start Engine | Displayed when neutral needs to be selected to restart engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 116). |
| Vehicle is ON | Displayed when the vehicle is in Auto-Start-Stop mode and the door is opened. Switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 116). |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### AWD (If Equipped)

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| AWD Temporarily Disabled | Displayed when the AWD system has been temporarily disabled to protect itself from overheating. |
| AWD OFF | Displayed when the AWD system has been automatically disabled to protect itself. This is caused by operating the vehicle with the compact spare tire installed or if the system is overheating. |
| AWD Restored | The AWD system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system is allowed to cool. |
| AWD Malfunction Service Required | Displayed in conjunction with the Throttle Control/Transmission/AWD light when the AWD system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |

### 4x4

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| 4x4 Temporarily Disabled | Displayed when the 4x4 system has been temporarily disabled to protect itself from overheating. |
| 4x4 OFF | Displayed when the 4x4 system has been automatically disabled to protect itself. This is caused by operating the vehicle with the compact spare tire installed or if the system is overheating. |
| 4x4 Restored | The 4x4 system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system is allowed to cool. |
| 4WD Malfunction Service Required | Displayed in conjunction with the Throttle Control/Transmission/4x4 light when the 4x4 system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Battery and Charging System

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Check Charging System | Displayed when the charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |
| Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off | Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal |
| Turn Power Off To Save Battery | Displayed when the battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery. |

## Doors and Locks

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Door Ajar | Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving. |
| | Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed. |
| Trunk Ajar | Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed. |
| Hood Ajar | Displays when the hood is not completely closed. |
| Switches Inhibited Security Mode | Displays when the door switches have been disabled. |
| Child Lock Malfunction Service Required | Displayed when there is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |
| Factory Keypad Code {X X X X X} | Displays the factory keypad code after the keypad has been reset. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Driver Alert

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Driver Alert Warning Rest Now | Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so. |
| Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested | Take a rest break soon. |

### Fuel

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Fuel Level Low | Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition. |
| Check Fuel Fill Inlet | Displayed when the fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed. |

### Hill Start Assist

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Hill Start Assist Not Available | Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 135). |

### Hill Descent Control

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| For Hill Descent Reduce Speed 20MPH or Less | Displayed when vehicle speed is too high for HDC to engage. Reduce speed to below that indicated in the message to engage HDC. |
| Hill Descent Control Off System Cooling | Displayed when HDC cannot be engaged due to excessive heat. Allow system to cool before re-engaging. |
| Hill Descent Control Fault | Displayed when there is a fault with the HDC system. See your authorized dealer. |
| For Hill Descent Select Gear | Displayed when HDC cannot be engaged due to vehicle not being in gear. Select gear to engage HDC. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Keys and Starting

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| To START Press Brake | Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle. |
| Starting System Fault | This message is displayed when there is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See your authorized dealer for service. |
| To START Press Brake and Clutch | Displayed as a reminder to press the brake and clutch while starting the vehicle. |
| To START Press Clutch | Displayed as a reminder to press the clutch in while starting the vehicle. |
| Key Program Successful | Displayed during spare key programming, when an intelligent access key is programmed to the system. |
| Key Program Failure | Displayed during spare key programming, when an intelligent access key has failed to be programmed. |
| Max Number of Keys Learned | Displayed during spare key programming when the maximum number of keys have been programmed. |
| Not Enough Keys Learned | Displayed during spare key programming when not enough keys have been programmed. |
| Key Battery Low Replace Soon | Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. |
| Could Not Program Integrated Key | Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing keys. |
| Engine ON | Displays to inform the driver that they are exiting the vehicle and the engine is on. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Lane Keeping System

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required | The system has malfunctioned. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |
| Front Camera Temporarily Not Available | The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable. |
| Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen | The system has detected a condition that requires the windshield to be cleaned to operate properly. |
| Front Camera Malfunction Service Required | The system has malfunctioned. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |
| Keep Hands on Steering Wheel | Displayed when the system requests the driver to keep their hands on the steering wheel. |

## Maintenance

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Low Engine Oil Pressure | Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |
| Change Engine Oil Soon | Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 251). |
| Oil Change Required | Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 251). |
| Brake Fluid Level Low | Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 253). |
| Check Brake System | Displays when the brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer. |
| Engine Coolant Over Temperature | Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealer. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 252). |
| Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp | Displays when the engine has reduced power in order to help reduce high coolant temperatures. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Transport Mode Contact Dealer | Displays to indicate that the vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See your authorized dealer. |
| Factory Mode Contact Dealer | Displays to indicate that the vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See your authorized dealer. |
| See Manual | Informs the driver that the powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction. |

## Parking Aid

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Check Front Park Aid | Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Front Parking Aid** (page 146). |
| Check Rear Park Aid | Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 145). |
| Front Park Aid On Off | Displays the parking aid status. |
| Rear Park Aid On Off | Displays the parking aid status. |

## Parking Brake

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Park Brake Engaged | Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 5 km/h. If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer. |
| Park Brake Malfunction Service Now | The parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See your authorized dealer. |
| Park Brake Not Applied Apply Park Brake | Displays when the parking brake is not set. |
| Park Brake Use Switch to Release | Displays when the parking brake is set but has not be released. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| To Release: Press Brake and Switch | Displays when the parking brake is set but has not be released and the vehicle is moving. |
| Park Brake Limited Function Service Required | The parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See your authorized dealer. |
| Park Brake System Overheated | Displays when the parking brake was not released causing it to overheat. |
| Release Park Brake | Displays when the parking brake is set and the vehicle is started. |
| Park Brake Applied | Displays when the parking brake is set. |
| Park Brake Released | Displays when the parking brake is released. |

## Power Steering

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Steering Lock Fault Service Now | The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See your authorized dealer. |
| Steering Loss Stop Safely | The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer. |
| Steering Assist Fault Service Required | The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. |

## Powertrain

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Check Locking Differential | Displayed when there is a malfunction with the electronic locking differential that requires service. See your authorized dealer. |
| Fuel Pressure Low | Displayed when there is a loss in fuel system pressure. See your authorized dealer. |
| Stop Safely Now | Displayed when there is a powertrain fault and vehicle has entered limp home mode. See your authorized dealer. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Starting System

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| To START Press Brake | Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake. |
| Engine Start Pending Please Wait | Displays when the starter is attempting to start the vehicle. |
| Pending Start Cancelled | Displays when the pending start has been cancelled. |
| Cranking Time Exceeded | Displays when the starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start the vehicle. |

## Terrain Management System (If Equipped)

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Terrain Management System Fault | Displayed when there is a fault with the Terrain Management system. See your authorized dealer. |
| Mode Change Not Accepted, Retry | Displayed when the Terrain Management system was unable to complete a mode change. Retry to enter terrain modes. |
| To Enter Rock Mode 4x4 LOW is Required | Displayed when Terrain Management system is unable to enter crawl mode as the vehicle is not in AWD Low. Engage AWD Low to enter crawl mode. |
| To Exit 4x4 LOW Exit Rock Mode | Displayed when AWD Low cannot be disengaged as the Terrain Management is in crawl mode. Exit crawl mode to disengage AWD Low. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Tire Pressure Low | Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 272). |
| Tire Pressure Monitor Fault | Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 272). |
| Tire Pressure Sensor Fault | Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 272). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |

## Traction Control

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Traction Control Off | Displays when the traction control system has been switched off. See **Traction Control** (page 137). |
| Traction Control On | Displays when the traction control system has been switched on. See **Traction Control** (page 137). |
| Spinout Detected Hazards Activated | Displays when a Spin out has occurred and the hazards are activated. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Transmission

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Transmission Malfunction Service Now | See your authorized dealer. |
| Transmission Service Required | See your authorized dealer. |
| Transmission Limited Function See Manual | Displays when the transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 124). |
| Transmission Not in Park | Displays as a reminder to shift into park. |
| Press Brake Pedal | Displays as a reminder to press the brake pedal in order to select a gear. |

## Trailer

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Trailer Brake Module Fault | Displayed when there is a fault with the Trailer module. See your authorized dealer. |
| Stop Safely Now | Displayed when there is a powertrain fault and vehicle has entered limp home mode. See your authorized dealer. |
| Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual | Displayed when there is a fault with the Trailer module. See your authorized dealer. |
| Trailer Stop Lamps Fault Check Lamps | Displayed when there is a fault with the stop lamps on the trailer. Check Lamps. |
| Trailer Park Lamps Fault Check Lamps | Displayed when there is a fault with the park lamps on the trailer. Check Lamps. |
| Trailer Left Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps | Displayed when there is a fault with the left lamps on the trailer. Check Lamps. |
| Trailer Right Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps | Displayed when there is a fault with the right lamps on the trailer. Check Lamps. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated Air

**WARNING**

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

### General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

#### Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

#### Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

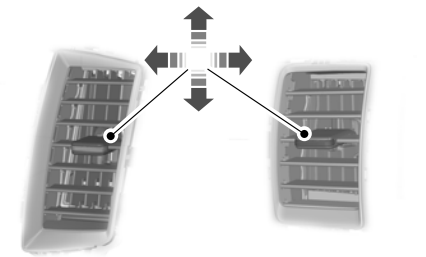
### Air Conditioning

The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** *The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C.*

**Note:** *When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.*

## AIR VENTS

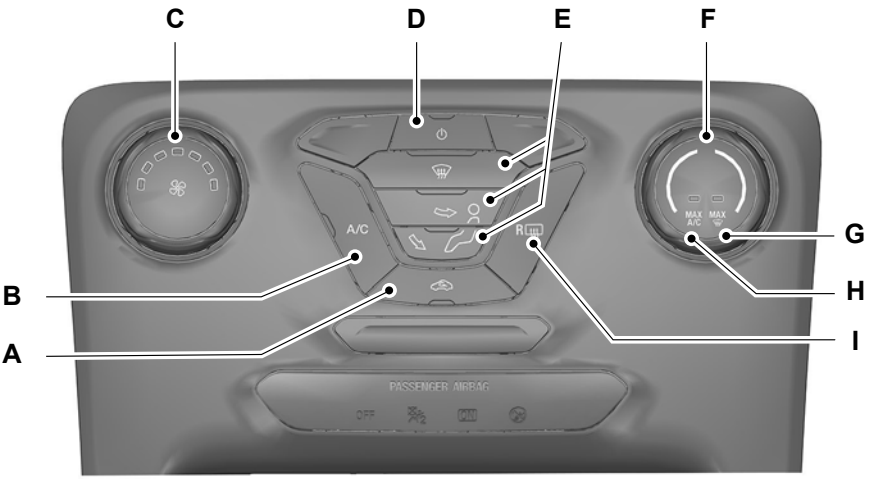


E201078



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL




E205820

A **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

B **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle.

**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

C **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

D **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.

E **Air distribution control:** Press the buttons to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off.

**Note:** At least one of these buttons illuminates when the system is on.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

F **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in the vehicle.

G **MAX defrost:** Adjust the control to turn on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when defrost is on.

H **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

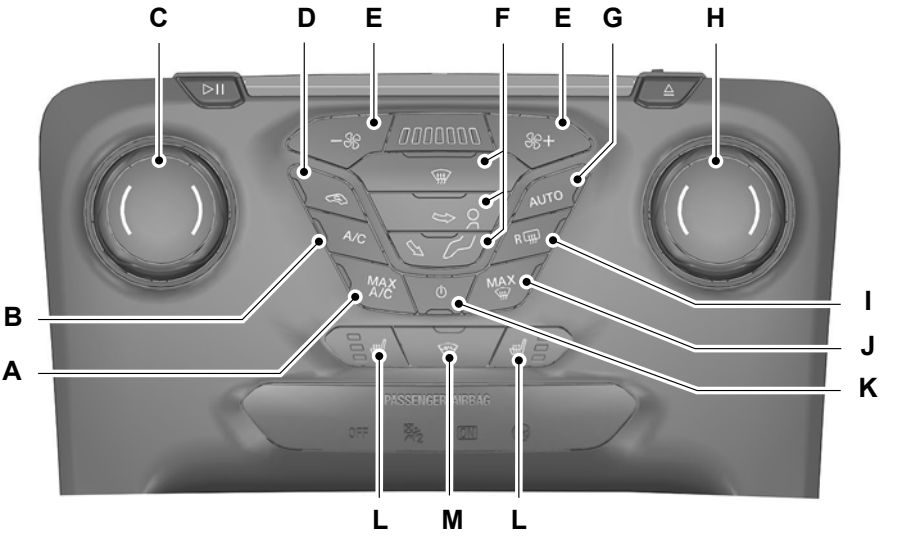
I **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

### Type 1




E205818

A **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

B **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

C **Passenger temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the passenger side.

D **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

E **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

F **Air distribution control:** Press the button to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off.

**Note:** At least one of these buttons illuminates when the system is on.

G **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also turn off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for greater than two seconds.

H **Driver temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the driver side. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

I **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).

J **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when defrost is on.

K **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.

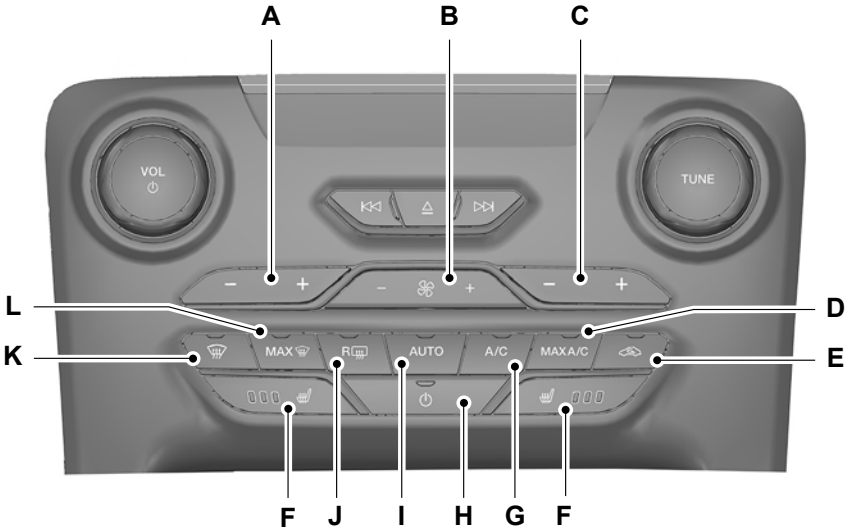
L **Heated Seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off.

M **Heated Windshield:** Press the button to switch the heated windshield on and off .



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Type 2




E200620

A **Passenger temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the passenger side.

B **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

C **Driver temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the driver side. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

D **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

E **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

F **Heated seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off.

G **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

H **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.

I **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also turn off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for greater than two seconds.

J **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).

K **Windshield defrost.** Press the button to redirect the air flow through windshield air vents.

L **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan speed and air inlet positions are automatically adjusted to best settings required for maximum defrost. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**WARNING**

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up. If the windows fog up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

**Note:** *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

**Note:** *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

**Note:** *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

**Note:** *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

**Note:** *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

### Manual Climate Control

**Note:** *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

**Note:** *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

**Note:** *If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.*

## Heating the Interior Quickly

| | Vehicle with manual climate control | Vehicle with automatic climate control |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting. | Press the **AUTO** button. |
| 2 | Adjust the temperature control to the full heat setting. | Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. |
| 3 | Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons. | |

## Recommended Settings for Heating

| | Vehicle with manual climate control | Vehicle with automatic climate control |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Adjust the fan speed to the center setting. | Press the **AUTO** button. |
| 2 | Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings. | Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary. |
| 3 | Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons. | |

## Cooling the Interior Quickly

| | Vehicle with manual climate control | Vehicle with automatic climate control |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position. | Press the **MAX A/C** button. |
| 2 | Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents. | |

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

| | Vehicle with manual climate control | Vehicle with automatic climate control |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Adjust the fan speed to the center setting. | Press the **AUTO** button. |
| 2 | Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings. | Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary. |
| 3 | Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons. | |

## Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

| | Vehicle with manual climate control | Vehicle with automatic climate control |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons. | Press the defrost button. |
| 2 | Press the **A/C** button if the indicator is off. | Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary. |
| 3 | Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. | |
| 4 | Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting. | |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

**Note:** *Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.*

### Heated Windshield



Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog.

### Heated Rear Window



Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog. Press the button to switch the system off. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.*

### Heated Exterior Mirror

**Note:** *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.*

**Note:** *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

Both mirrors are heated to remove ice, mist and fog when the heated rear window is switched on.

## CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle cabin air filter gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.
- It reduces unpleasant odor and pollutants (vehicles fitted with odor filter).

The cabin air filter is behind the glove box.

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times.

This prevents foreign objects from entering the system.

Running the system without a filter in place could degrade or damage the system.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

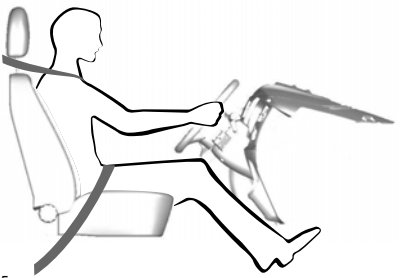
## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

**WARNINGS**

Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

**WARNINGS**

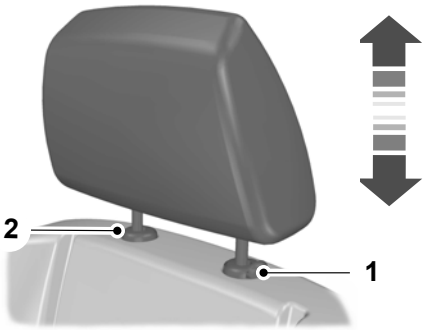
Raise the rear head restraint when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger.

When front seats are in use the head restraints must not be removed.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Adjusting the head restraints




E140447

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

### Raising the head restraint:

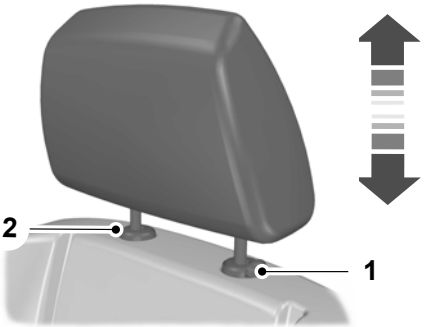
Pull the head restraint up until it locks into a suitable height.

### Lowering the head restraint

Press locking button 1 and push the head restraint down until it locks into a suitable height.

## Removing the head restraints

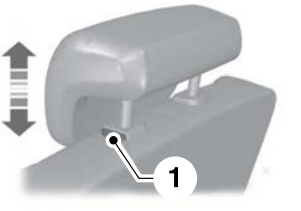
### Front head restraints




E140447

Pull to move the head restraint upward. Press locking button 1 and at the same time release the retaining clip 2 using a suitable implement. Pull the head restraint up and out of the seat back.

### Rear outer head restraints




E151804

Pull to move the head restraint upward. Press the locking button 1 to lower the head restraint or to remove the head restraint.

## MANUAL SEATS

**WARNINGS**

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Seat covers fitted to your vehicle as part of a special equipment pack are washable without removing them from the seats.*

**Note:** *Seat covers are designed and fitted to work with the seat's existing features and safety systems, and should not require adjustment. If seat cover removal and installation is required, see an authorized Ford dealer.*

### Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

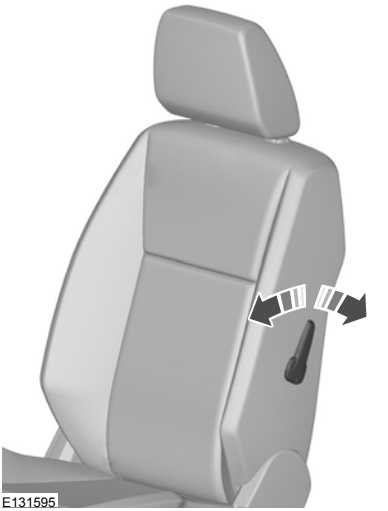

E131590

**WARNINGS**

Make sure the driver seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.

Do not move the front seats too close to the instrument panel.

### Adjusting the Lumbar Support


E131595



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat



E131593

## Recline Adjustment



E131592

## Folding the Seatback - Stretch cab

Folding the front passenger seat allows easy access to the rear seat.



E136219

## Bench seat



E135862

## POWER SEATS

**WARNINGS**

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

**Note:** *Seat covers fitted to your vehicle as part of a special equipment pack are washable without removing them from the seats.*

**Note:** *Seat covers are designed and fitted to work with the seat's existing features and safety systems, and should not require adjustment. If seat cover removal and installation is required, see an authorized Ford dealer.*

### Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



E131591

**WARNING**

Do not move the front seats too close to the instrument panel.

### Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat



E131594



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Recline Adjustment



E131596

### Tilting the Seat



E131607

## REAR SEATS

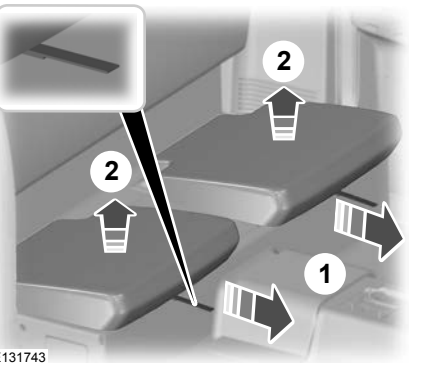
**Note:** *Stow the rear seat belt tongue into the pockets provided in the sides of the rear seat back to prevent rattling when not in use.*

**Note:** *Seat covers fitted to your vehicle as part of a special equipment pack are washable without removing them from the seats.*

**Note:** *Seat covers are designed and fitted to work with the seat's existing features and safety systems, and should not require adjustment. If seat cover removal and installation is required, see an authorized Ford dealer.*

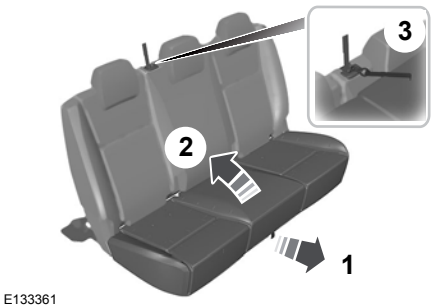
### Folding the Seat Cushion

#### Stretch cab




E131743

**Double cab**




E133361

## Unfolding the Seat Cushion

**Note:** *The cushion tether strap must be stowed in the pocket provided.*

## Folding the Seatback

**Double cab**

**WARNINGS**

When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.

Do not use the rear surface of the rear seat back as a load floor.

Do not de-latch and fold the seatback when the seat cushion is folded up.




E131744

1. Pull the release strap upward.
2. Push the seatback forward.

## Unfolding the Seatback

**Double cab**

**WARNINGS**

When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the safety belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

## 12 Volt DC Power Point

**WARNING**

Incorrect use of the 12 Volt DC Power Point can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will run out of charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

**Note:** *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

After you switch the ignition off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 75 minutes.

**Note:** *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the outlet and blows the fuse.*

**Note:** *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

**Note:** *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 150 watt or a fuse may blow.*

**Note:** *Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.*

**Note:** *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when your engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is in park (P) for extended periods.

## Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel above the cup holders.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the rear cargo area.

## AC Power Point

**WARNING**

Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt or 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload. Powering multiple devices can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** *Keep the vehicle running to use the power point.*

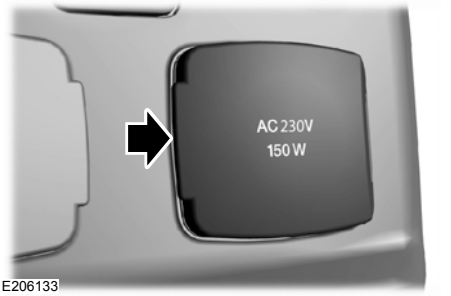
**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle, the power point may open to the right or upward.*

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle, the power point may provide 230 volt AC power, or 110 volt AC power.*

With the engine off, the power point works up to maximum 75 minutes (or less). The power point turns off automatically if the battery voltage becomes low. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015



E206133

You can use the power point for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

The power point indicator light, located on the power point, shows when the power point is ready for use.

When the power point indicator light is:

- On — the power point is ready to supply power.
- Off — the power point power supply is off and so is the ignition.
- Flashing — the power point is in fault mode, or the battery voltage is to low.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

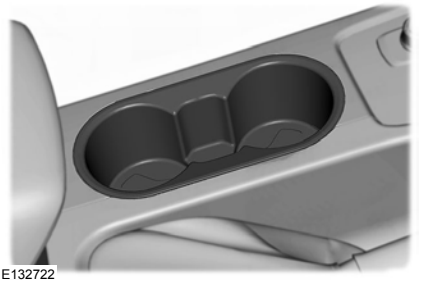
## CUP HOLDERS

**WARNING**

Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

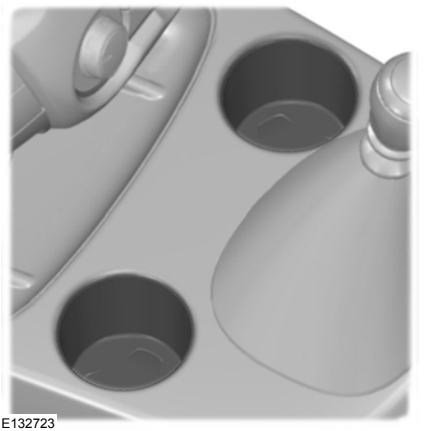
Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

**Centre Console Cup Holder - Type 1**



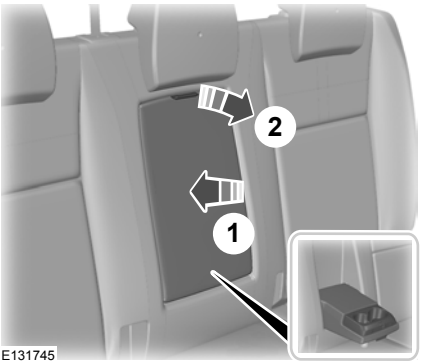
E132722

**Centre Console Cup Holder - Type 2**



E132723

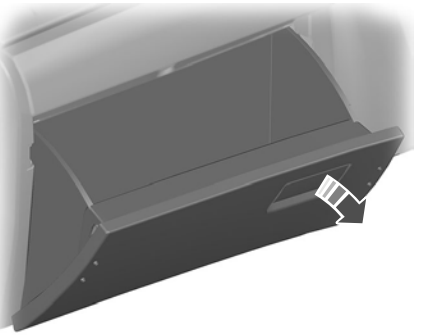
**Rear Seat Cup Holder (If Equipped)**




E131745

1 Push the seat base.
2 Pull the tab.

## GLOVE BOX

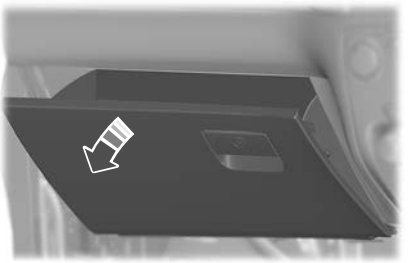


E136461

**Note:** *When opening the glove box, allowing the glove box dampener to lower it gently until it comes to rest.*

The glove box is located on the passenger side of the instrument panel. The glove box is opened using the latch handle.

### Glove box with key



E206091

The glove box can be locked using the ignition key. To lock, close the glove box, then insert the ignition key into the glove box lock and rotate it clockwise. Remove the key.

To unlock the glove box, insert the ignition key into the glove box lock and rotate it counter clockwise. The glove box will then open as normal using the latch handle.

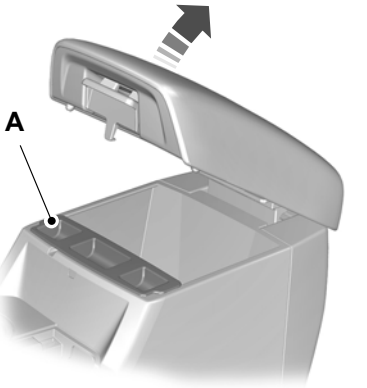
## CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:

- Front Cup Holders. See **Cup Holders** (page 109).
- Auxiliary Power Points. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 107).
- Media Hub See **Media Hub** (page 330).

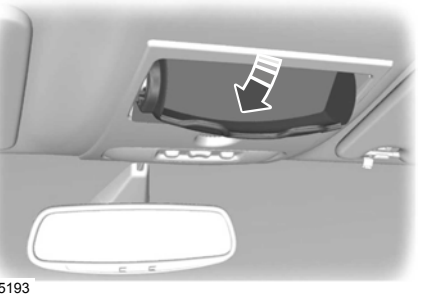
### Center Console Armrest




E205766

A Coin tray.

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE



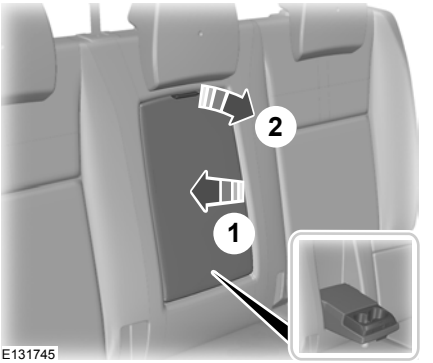
E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

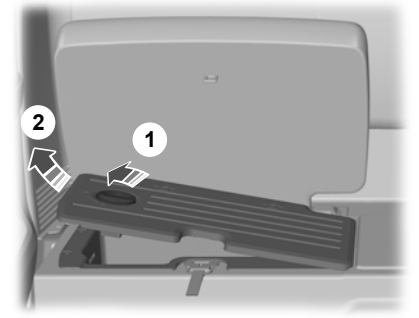
## REAR SEAT ARMREST




1. Push the armrest into the seatback and hold.
2. Pull the strap and open the armrest.

## UNDER SEAT STORAGE

### Stretch Cab



## GENERAL INFORMATION

### General points on starting

If the battery has been disconnected the vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approx. 8 kilometers (5 miles) after reconnecting the battery.

This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. Any unusual driving characteristics during this period may be disregarded.

### Starting the engine by towing or pushing

**WARNING**

To prevent damage you must not push or tow start your vehicle. Use booster cables and a booster battery. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 186).

## IGNITION SWITCH

**WARNING**

Never return the key to position **0** or **I** when the vehicle is in motion.




E72128

**0** The ignition is off.

**I** The ignition and all main electrical circuits are disabled.

**Note:** *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid discharging the battery.*

**II** The ignition is switched on. All electrical circuits are operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate. This is the key position when driving. You must also select it when being towed.

**III** The starter motor is activated. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

**WARNING**

Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

### Unlocking the Steering Wheel

#### Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

Switch the ignition on or press the brake pedal.

#### Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Switch the ignition on.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

**Note:** *You can only operate the starter 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system does not allow you to try again for about 30 minutes.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Cold or Hot Engine

#### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Start the engine.

#### All Vehicles

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait ten seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -25ºC, press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

### Fuel Flooded Engine

#### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

#### All Vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

### Engine Idle Speed after Starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting minimizes vehicle emissions and maximizes cabin comfort and fuel economy.

The idle speed varies depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

### Failure to Start

#### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when you full depress the clutch pedal with the ignition key in position **III**, follow this procedure:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

### Cold or Hot Engine

#### All Vehicles

**Note:** *When the temperature is below -15ºC, you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

**Note:** *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.*

**Note:** *After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015


Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

### Vehicles With Manual Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

### Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *Releasing the brake pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

## Failure to Start

### Vehicles With Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

# DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

## Regeneration

**WARNING**


Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

**Note:** *Avoid running out of fuel.*

**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

**Note:** *After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.*

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles With a Turbocharger

**WARNING**

Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## AUTO-START-STOP

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights.

**WARNINGS**

The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.

Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.

Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

**Note:** *For vehicles with auto-start-stop, the battery requirement is different. Replace it with one of exactly the same specification as the original.*



The auto-start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 62). It will flash amber with a message when the driver needs to shift to neutral or press a pedal. See **Information Messages** (page 77).



The auto-start-stop indicator will remain gray if the system is not available. See **Information Displays** (page 68).

### Using Auto-Start-Stop Manual Transmission

#### To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch and accelerator pedal.

#### To Re-Start the Engine

Press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.*

**Note:** *Start-stop also comes with stall recovery. If you fully depress the clutch pedal after stalling the engine, the engine automatically restarts.*

### Limitations of Use

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low engine operating temperature.
- To maintain the interior climate.
- The battery charge level is low.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The drivers door has been opened.
- When the driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The heated windshield is on.
- During regeneration of the diesel particulate filter.
- If 4WD is selected.

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate, for example air conditioning.
- The battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The heated windshield is turned on.
- If 4WD is selected.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Switching the System On and Off

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

To switch the system off, press switch located on the centre console. The word OFF will illuminate. Press the switch again to turn the system back on. The system only switches off for the current ignition cycle.

**Note:** *If the system detects a malfunction, it is deactivated. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.*

**Note:** *The system may not function if you leave electrical equipment connected with the ignition off.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

**WARNINGS**

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

**WARNINGS**

Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

**Note:** *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

Use minimum 91 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 20% (E20).

### Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

**WARNINGS**

Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

**Note:** *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

**Note:** *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

### Biodiesel Usage

**WARNING**

Do not use raw oils, fats or waste cooking greases, these are not biodiesel.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 20% (B20). You can achieve acceptable engine performance and durability using B20 by adhering to the below guidelines.

**Note:** *Use B20 fuel that meets the equivalent specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification, from a trusted fuel supplier.*

**Note:** *The B20 fuel used should be dispensed from a service station pump labelled in accordance with the requirements of national regulations.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle experiences low temperature fuel waxing issues, consider using different diesel brands or diesel with lower biodiesel content.*

### Long-Term Storage

Do not leave vehicles filled with B20 fuels parked for more than 1 month. Diesel fuels containing biodiesel can degrade quickly when stored for long periods of time, especially when exposed to warm and humid conditions. It is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available). Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from your dealer.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL - DIESEL

Avoid running out of fuel. This may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refuelling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 4 L of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 4 L may be required.

### Fuel Run Dry Protection Feature

Your vehicle is fitted with a fuel run dry protection system to prevent engine damage.

The vehicle will enter an engine misfire mode and shutdown at a pre determined distance after the **Distance to Empty** becomes zero.

Refill the fuel tank with a minimum of 4 L diesel before resetting the feature.

Reset the fuel run dry protection feature by following the below steps:

1. Insert the ignition key and turn to position **II** (Ignition).
2. Hold the key in the position for 20 seconds and turn back to **0** (Off).
3. Repeat the steps three times to complete the reset procedure.

### Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

**WARNING**

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

### Driving with a Catalytic Converter

**WARNINGS**

Avoid running out of fuel.

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 186).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## REFUELING

**WARNINGS**

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 200 mm.

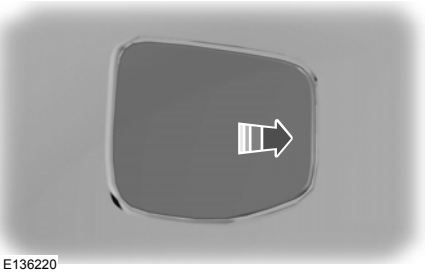
We recommend that you wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Stop refueling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

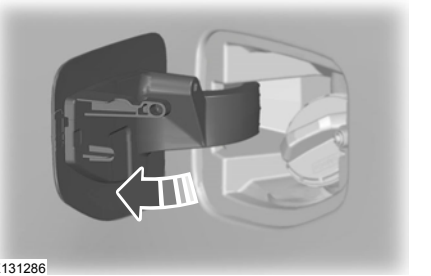
Do not remove the fuel nozzle from its fully inserted position during the refueling process.

**Note:** *Central locking also locks and unlocks the fuel filler flap. See* ***Locking and Unlocking*** *(page 37).*

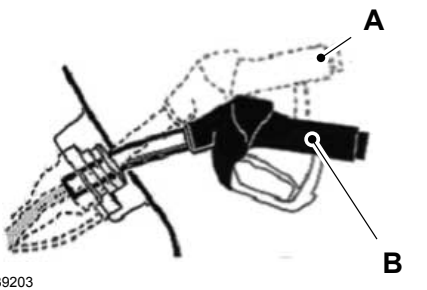
### Vehicles with Fuel Filler Cap


E136220

1. Press the flap to open it.


E131286

2. Open the flap fully until it engages.
3. Turn the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise.



E139203

4. Hold the fuel nozzle in position B during refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.
6. Install the fuel cap by rotating it clockwise until it clicks.
7. Close and push the fuel filler flap to lock it.

**Note:** *If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace only with the cap designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford fuel filler cap is not used.*

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO2 and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 or ECE R 101 and subsequent amendments where applicable. They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle. Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted, payload and towing. The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in the fuel tank and when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.*

### Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Allow no more than two automatic shut-offs when refueling.

**Note:** *Results are most accurate when the refueling method is consistent.*

### Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,600 km of driving (this is the engine break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 4,000 km. Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

- Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
- Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
- After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

- Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
- Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled). Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or freeway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions.

Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, your vehicle will use more fuel in cold temperatures.

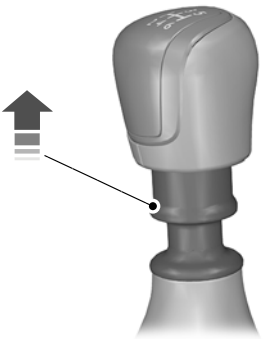


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E184729

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

**WARNING**

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you move the transmission selector lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

### Selector lever positions




E132720

| | |
|---|---|
| P | Park. |
| R | Reverse. |
| N | Neutral. |
| D | Drive. |
| S | Sport mode and manual shifting. |
| S+ | Manual shift up. |
| S- | Manual shift down. |

**WARNING**

Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.

**Note:** *A cold engine has a higher idle speed. This will increase the tendency for your vehicle to creep when you have selected a drive gear.*

Press the button on the transmission selector lever to select reverse (R) and park (P).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

The transmission selector lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

**Park (P)**

**WARNINGS**

Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

Apply the parking brake and move the transmission selector lever to park (P) before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the transmission selector lever is latched in position.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission selector lever in this position.

**Note:** *To move the selector lever from park (P), apply the footbrake with ignition key in position II.*

**Note:** *An audible warning will sound if you open the driver's door and you have not moved the transmission selector lever to park (P).*

**Note:** *The battery saver will deactivate the audible warning after a period of time.*

**Reverse (R)**

**WARNINGS**

Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Always come to a complete stop before shifting the transmission selector lever out of reverse (R).

Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

**Neutral (N)**

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the transmission selector lever in this position.

**Drive (D)**

**Note:** *A shift will occur only when your vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.*

Select drive (D) to shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will select the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

## Sport Mode and Manual Shifting

**Sport mode**

**Note:** *In sport (S) mode the transmission operates as normal but gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.*

**Note:** *In sport mode **S** will be shown in the instrument cluster display.*

**Note:** *When towing heavy loads or in hilly terrain, it is recommended that sport (S) mode is selected. This will result in cooler transmission temperatures and additional engine braking.*

Switch on sport (S) mode by moving the transmission selector lever from drive (D) towards the driver. Sport (S) mode will remain on until either you shift manually up or down the gears using **+** and **-**.

**Manual shifting**

**WARNINGS**

Do not hold the transmission selector lever permanently in **-** or **+**.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**WARNINGS**

The transmission will automatically downshift when the engine speed is too low.



E136209

Manual shifting can be done only when the selector lever is in sport (S). Move the transmission selector lever forward to downshift and backward to upshift.

When the vehicle is stationary, only the 1st and 2nd gears can be selected.

Manual shifting is sequential, therefore gears cannot be skipped.

The transmission will remain in the selected gear. When the engine speed is too low or idle, it will downshift to 2nd gear. The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster. See **General Information** (page 68).

## Hints on driving with an automatic transmission

**WARNING**

Do not idle the engine for long periods of time in drive (D) with the brakes applied.

### Moving off

**WARNING**

It is not possible to tow-start or push-start a vehicle fitted with an automatic transmission. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 186).

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

### Stopping

1. Release the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Move the transmission selector lever to neutral (N) or park (P).

### Kickdown

Press the accelerator pedal fully with the transmission selector lever in the drive (D) to select the lower gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

### If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

## Emergency Park Position Release Lever

**WARNINGS**

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working correctly. See an authorized dealer.

Use the button to move the transmission selector lever from the park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle battery has no charge.


E132721

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off before performing this procedure.
2. Lift up the cover in the center console next to the transmission selector lever with a suitable tool.
3. Push down the locking button in the slot and simultaneously move the selector lever out of park (P).

**Note:** *Take care when opening the cover.*

**Note:** *See an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.*

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The four-wheel drive system in your vehicle is a part-time system activated using the rotary switch mounted in the centre console. In normal rear-wheel drive operation (**2H**) drive torque is directed to the rear axle. When the switch is moved to **4H** or **4L**, drive torque is directed to both the front and rear axles, providing four-wheel drive operation.

Depending on your vehicle, further four-wheel drive options may be available on the switch panel located on the centre console.

## USING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

**Note:** *A clicking sound from the drive line may be heard while shifting between ranges, which is normal.*



E132692

### Two-Wheel Drive, High Range (2H)

Use for all normal road driving and also for off-road driving across dry, level terrain.

### Four-Wheel Drive, High Range (4H)

**WARNING**

Do not use four-wheel drive **4H** for normal road driving.

Use for off-road driving.

We recommend that you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components if your vehicle is subject to off-road use.

**Note:** *The four-wheel drive indicator lamp will come on when the transfer shift switch is in the **4H** position. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 62).*

### Four-Wheel Drive, Low Range (4L)

**WARNING**

Do not use four-wheel drive **4L** for normal road driving.

Use for more extreme off-road conditions, such as steep ascents and descents.

Also use when low speed manoeuvring is necessary, such as negotiating a boulder-strewn river bed.

We recommend that you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components if your vehicle is subject to off-road use.

**Note:** *The four-wheel drive low range **4L** and four-wheel drive indicator lamps will come on when the transfer shift switch is in the **4L** position. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 62).*

### Shifting Between 2H and 4H

**Note:** *Shift to **2H** will reactivate all the stability control (ESP) functions.*

Shift between **2H** and **4H** can be done with the vehicle moving up to 110 km/h, but only with the accelerator pedal released. During the shift the indicator lamp will flash.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Shifting Between 2H and 4L

**Note:** *Shift to **4L** will deactivate Engine Traction Control and Trailer Stability Control but Hill Descent Control, Hill Start Assist and Brake Traction Control remain active.*

**Note:** *Shift to **2H** will reactivate all the stability control (ESP) functions.*

1. Stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission).
3. Move the transmission selector lever to neutral (N) (automatic transmission).
4. Turn the transfer shift switch from **2H** to **4L** or **4L** to **2H**.

During the shift the indicator lamp will flash. If it continues to flash, check meeting the above conditions.

## Shifting Between 4H and 4L

**Note:** *Shift to **4L** will deactivate Engine Traction Control and Trailer Stability Control but Hill Descent Control, Hill Start Assist and Brake Traction Control remain active.*

1. Stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission).
3. Move the transmission selector lever to neutral (N) (automatic transmission).
4. Turn the transfer shift switch from **4H** to **4L** or **4L** to **4H**.

During the shift the indicator lamp will flash. If it continues to flash, check meeting the above conditions.

## Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive

Four-wheel drive vehicles are suitable for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the freeway.

When driving at slow speeds off road under high load conditions, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

### Basic Operating Principles

When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice proceed with care.

### If Your Vehicle leaves the Road

If your vehicle leaves the road, reduce your vehicle speed and avoid severe braking. When your vehicle speed has been reduced ease your vehicle back onto the road. Do not turn the steering wheel sharply while returning your vehicle to the road.

It may be safer to stay on the shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the road. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

It may be less risky to strike small objects, such as freeway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the road which could cause your vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Emergency Maneuvers

In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid over-driving your vehicle (i.e. turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering can result in loss of vehicle control. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal when changes in vehicle speed are required. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking. This could result in an increased risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Use all available road surface to bring your vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

If your vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e. from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way your vehicle responds to a maneuver (i.e. steering, acceleration or braking).

### Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip.

Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This will cause the system to overheat.

To resume operation, switch the ignition off and allow the system to cool down for a minimum of 15 minutes.

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Avoid driving at excessive speeds, this causes vehicle momentum to work against you and your vehicle could become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

### Mud and Water

#### *Mud*

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. If your vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

#### *Water*

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims. If the ignition system gets wet, your vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop your vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by applying light pressure to the brake pedal while moving slowly.

**Note:** *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If your vehicle stalls, do not try to turn around because this could cause vehicle roll over. It is better to reverse back to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral. Disengage overdrive or move the transmission selector lever to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer your vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

### Driving on Snow and Ice

**WARNING**

If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.*

Four-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it will not stop any faster as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. As your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 134).

### If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, damage to the transmission may occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.*

### Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty. For this reason, we strongly recommend that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (i.e. lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

We recommend that you use caution when your vehicle has either a high load or device (i.e. ladder or luggage racks). Any modifications to your vehicle that raise the center of gravity may cause your vehicle to roll over when there is a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to maintain your vehicle correctly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect you and your passenger's safety. We recommend you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components when your vehicle is subject to off road usage.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the limited slip axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration in tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

## ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL

**WARNING**

Do not operate the system on sealed roads. Doing so may lead to excessive tire noise and wear. Use the system only in consistently slippery or loose surface.

The system locks the left and right portions of the rear axle together to form a solid driving axle, resulting in increased rear wheel traction in certain conditions.

Press the electronic differential lock button to activate the system.



E214414

The electronic differential lock will lock and unlock when the internal gears are aligned and no torque load is placed on the differential. To aid alignment, drive the vehicle in a straight line with the accelerator pedal released. Alternatively, drive slowly forward and backward while moving the steering wheel from side to side to allow the electronic differential lock to lock.

The system will:

- Automatically disengage when a speed of 40 km/h is exceeded.
- Automatically re-engage when the speed drops below 30 km/h.
- Automatically disengage when the ignition is turned off.

**Note:** *The system activates when the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h and accelerator pedal released.*

**Note:** *The system can be used in any transmission drive range (**2H**, **4H** or **4L**).*

If the system is selected when driving above 40 km/h, the request is stored and will be engaged when the vehicle speed reduces to 30 km/h. The electronic differential lock indicator lamp will flash until either the vehicle speed reduces and the differential lock is engaged or the driver deselects the electronic differential lock button.

**Note:** *When the system is engaged, the Electronic Stability Program (ESP) functions such as Stability Control, Traction Control, Hill Descent Control, Emergency stop signal, Hill Start Assist and Trailer Stability Control will be deactivated, the ESP Off indicator illuminates, and the HDC on indicator turns off.*

**Note:** *When the anti-lock braking system is operating, the system will be disengaged.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Disc Brakes

Wet brake discs result in reduced braking efficiency. Dab the brake pedal when driving from a car wash to remove the film of water.

### Anti-Lock Brake System

**WARNING**


The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

### Brake Override

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow your vehicle and reduce engine power.

If you experience this condition:

1. Apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the engine off.
3. Select park (P) (automatic transmission only).
4. Apply the parking brake.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to a dealer.

### Brake Inspection

Disc brake pads should be checked to confirm that each disc brake pad lining has a suitable amount of friction material for safe use.

#### Inspection and Verification

**Note:** *Disc brake pads must be replaced as an "axle set". Do not replace an individual disc brake pad or disc brake pads on one brake assembly only.*

1. Using a suitable tool, such as an inspection mirror, look into the inspection hole on the back of each disc brake caliper.
2. Inspect the inner and outer disc brake pads to confirm each disc brake pad lining measures 1.5 mm thick or more.

**Note:** *See your authorised dealer if any disc brake pad lining is under 1.5 mm thickness.*

Inspect each brake caliper and anchor bracket for corrosion, wear, or damage.

#### Wear Adjustment

Automatic adjustment of disc brake friction material during brake application occurs as follows:

- The piston slides within its bore to a new position, taking up the brake pad wear.
- The brake caliper moves on its guide pins, taking up the brake pad wear.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** *When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## PARKING BRAKE

**WARNING**

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**Note:** *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

## HILL START ASSIST

**WARNINGS**

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and move the transmission selector lever into park (P).

You must remain in your vehicle once you have turned the system on.

**WARNINGS**

The system is active unless ESC warning lamp is turned off. During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

If the engine is revved excessively or if a malfunction is detected, the system will turn off and ESC warning lamp will turn on.

There is a short delay in the system activation of up to two seconds after shifting the lever to drive (D) or reverse (R) in vehicles with automatic transmission.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

The system will turn on automatically on any slope which can result in significant vehicle rollback.

**Note:** *Hill start assist is available in vehicles equipped with electronic stability control (ESC).*

### Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

### Enable and Disable the System

You can enable the system only if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running.
- All doors are fully closed.
- The parking brake is fully disengaged.
- No failure mode is present.
- Accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- Vehicle is completely stopped.
- Uphill: Gear shift lever should be in drive (D) for Automatic transmission and in any position other than reverse (R) for manual transmission.
- Downhill: Gear shift lever should be in reverse (R).

To disable the system, perform one of the following:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Open any door.
- Drive off uphill without re-applying the brake.
- Wait for one to two seconds after you remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- If the system is active in a forward gear, select reverse gear.
- If the system is active in neutral, release the clutch pedal (Manual transmission).
- If the system is active in reverse gear, select neutral.

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** *You can only switch the system on and off if your vehicle has a manual transmission.*

**Note:** *The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.*

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 68).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

Traction control forms part of the stability control system.

**Note:** *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *Shift to **4L** will deactivate engine traction control but brake traction control will remain active.*

In some situations for example if your vehicle is stuck in snow or mud, turning the system off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power.

Traction control is an enhanced feature of stability control system and automatically detects the wheel spin when you accelerate. If this situation occurs, the system applies your vehicle brakes at individual wheels and if necessary, reduces engine power.

**Note:** *Shifting to 4x4 Low deactivates engine traction control but brake traction control remains active.*

To switch off the traction control, See **Using Stability Control** (page 138).

Stability control will remain on even when you have switched the traction control off.



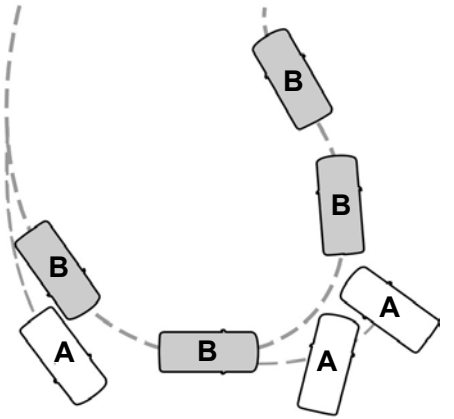
Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Electronic Stability Control

**WARNING**

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.




E72903

A Without ESC.
B With ESC.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system performs this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as required.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

#### Stability Control Warning Lamp

While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 62).

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

**Note:** *The system will be switched on automatically every time you switch the ignition on.*



E207884

The system can be deactivated using the switch in the centre console.

**Note:** *When the system is deactivated with the transfer switch in **2H** position, the ESC off indicator will flash twice to indicate that the system is completely turned off and remains illuminated. Press the switch again to enable the system. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).*

**Note:** *ESC is switched off when the transfer switch is in **4L** position or the Electronic Locking Differential is operating.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### 2-wheel drive vehicles

Press and hold the switch for one second to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Stability Control. Hill Start Assist remains active.

Press and hold the switch for five seconds to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Stability Control and Brake Traction Control. Hill Start Assist remain active.

### 4-wheel drive vehicles

**Note:** *All the stability control (ESC) functions are reactivated when **2H** position is selected.*

Transfer shift switch in **4H** position:

- Press and hold the switch for one second to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Stability Control and ESC. Hill Descent Control, Hill Start Assist and Brake Traction Control remain active.

Transfer shift switch in **4H** or **4L** position:

- Press and hold the switch for five seconds to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Stability Control and Brake Traction Control. Hill Descent Control and Hill Start Assist remain active.

Transfer shift switch in **2H** position:

- Press and hold the switch for one second to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Stability Control and ESC. Hill Descent Control, Hill Start Assist and Brake Traction Control remain active.
- Press and hold the switch for five seconds to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Stability Control and Brake Traction Control. Hill Descent Control and Hill Start Assist remain active.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The terrain response all-wheel drive system in your vehicle is an intelligent system that continuously monitors vehicle conditions and automatically adjusts the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. It combines transparent all-surface operation with highly capable all-wheel drive. The all-wheel drive system is always active and requires no driver input, however the driver can optimize more control by utilising the terrain response switch and low range selection switch, mounted in the centre console, for the correct terrain conditions.

**WARNING**

Vehicles with a higher centre of gravity such as all-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower centre of gravity. All-wheel drive vehicles are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvres in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The terrain response all-wheel drive system continuously monitors vehicle conditions and automatically adjusts the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. It combines transparent all-surface operation with highly capable all-wheel drive.

The terrain response all-wheel drive system is always active and requires no driver input. It is capable of handling all road conditions, including street and highway driving as well as off-road and winter driving. The driver can optimize more AWD control by moving the terrain response switch for the correct terrain. See **Using Terrain Response** (page 140).

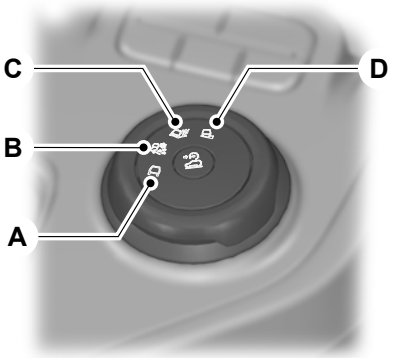
## USING TERRAIN RESPONSE

### Terrain Response All Wheel Drive System

The terrain response all-wheel drive system allows the driver to enhance the off-road performance of the vehicle, by selecting the mode best suited to the terrain and driving conditions. Each mode changes a number of the vehicle parameters within the engine, transmission, traction control and all-wheel drive systems.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015




E206127

A **Normal mode** - This mode is for on-road conditions and should be used on surfaces which are similar to hard road surfaces, or once the need for any of the off-road modes has passed.

B **Mud/Snow** – This mode should be used where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material. This includes gravel, shallow mud, wet grass or snow covered road.

C **Sand** - This mode should be used for crossing deep sand or deep sticky mud.

D **Rock** - This mode gives low speed controllability for crawling over rocks. Low range must be selected before this mode is activated. See **Principle of Operation** (page 140).

**High and Low Range Usage**

| | Normal | Mud/ Snow | Sand | Rock |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| High Range (H) | Yes | Yes | Yes | No |
| Low Range (L) | Yes | - | - | Yes |

Low range can be selected by pressing the 4X4 LOW switch in the centre console.

**Note:** *If an entry condition for any mode is not met, the information display screen will display the appropriate messages to guide the driver through the proper operating procedures.*

**Note:** *Operating the vehicle in any of the off-road modes does not guarantee that the vehicle will not become stuck in sand, snow or mud or other debris. It is the driver's responsibility to assess off-road situations and determine if the terrain is passable.*

## Off-Road Driving Aids (If Equipped)

- ELD (electronic locking differential) See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 133).

**Note:** *The locking and unlocking speeds may be different in different TMS modes.*

- HDC (hill descent control) See **Using Hill Descent Control** (page 142).

## Off-road Screen (If Equipped)

The real-time status of your vehicles off-road systems can be continuously monitored using the first off-road screen found in the information displays screen. For more information, See **Information Messages** (page 77).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING**

Before driving off-road it is absolutely essential that in-experienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular, Sport (S) mode and Hill Descent Control (HDC).

Hill descent control (HDC) operates in conjunction with stability control (ESC) to provide greater control when off-road, particularly when descending steep slopes. HDC operation is fully automatic when engaged.

Engine braking controls the speed of the descent during an off-road hill descent. If engine braking alone is insufficient to control the vehicle's speed, HDC will slow the vehicle using the braking system.

**Note:** *Use HDC only in first or reverse (R) gear in manual transmission vehicles.*

**Note:** *Use HDC only in drive (D), reverse (R) or sport (S) mode in automatic transmission vehicles. When in drive (D), the vehicle will select the most appropriate gear.*

## USING HILL DESCENT CONTROL

**Note:** *HDC deactivates when the electronic locking differential is operating.*

### Selecting HDC

To select HDC, press the hill descent control switch on the centre console.

Select HDC at speeds less than 60 km/h.

**Note:** *HDC will be active at speeds less than 35 km/h and deactivated above 40 km/h but will not turn off until vehicle exceeds 60 km/h.*

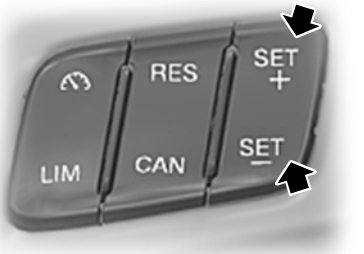
**Note:** *HDC will turn off when you switch the ignition off.*

The HDC switch will illuminate continuously to indicate that HDC is fully active.

HDC will temporarily deactivate during the following conditions:

- The brake is hot. Operation resumes once the brakes cool down.
- Stability control indicator on warning lamp is illuminated and operating.

### HDC Operation




E206132

Cruise control switches on the steering wheel allows you to control your speed of descent. **SET +** increases the speed and **SET -** decreases the speed.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Changing the Set Speed**

- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed will change in approximately 1 km/h increments.

Pressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal will increase or decrease the speed respectively.

**Note:** *Each gear has a pre-determined minimum speed.*

**Note:** *Descent speed will only increase on a slope steep enough to provide additional momentum. Therefore, use of the **SET+** switch on a gentle slope may not increase the speed.*

**Note:** *Brake overrides the HDC if the brake pedal is pressed and the system resumes on the release of the brake pedal.*

**Note:** *HDC assistance will fade out gradually if you switch the system off. This is to prevent the loss of control if you press the HDC switch unintentionally. If assistance is still required, you can switch back the HDC on. The control will resume at a speed the vehicle is travelling when the pedal is released.*

**Note:** *You may hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

**Note:** *When HDC is operating, ESC on warning lamp will flash.*

HDC operates only if the vehicle speed is within the specified range even if the system is on permanently during off-road driving.

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNINGS**

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

If your vehicles has a non-Ford approved trailer tow module the system may not correctly detect objects.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

The system does not detect objects that are moving away from your vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move toward your vehicle.

Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or a rear fitted accessory. For example, a bicycle carrier. The rear parking aid will only indicate the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.

Sensing is only an aid to detect some objects when moving forward or backward at low speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather or an external motor and fan can affect the sensors; this may include reduced performance or false activation. To help avoid personal injury you must read and understand the limitations of the system detailed in this section.

**WARNINGS**

The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

**Note:** *If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 cm.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.*

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.*

**Note:** *The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## REAR PARKING AID

**WARNINGS**

Sensing is only an aid to detect some objects when moving forward or backward at low speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather or an external motor and fan can affect the sensors; this may include reduced performance or false activation. To help avoid personal injury you must read and understand the limitations of the system detailed in this section.

The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

### Rear Sensing System

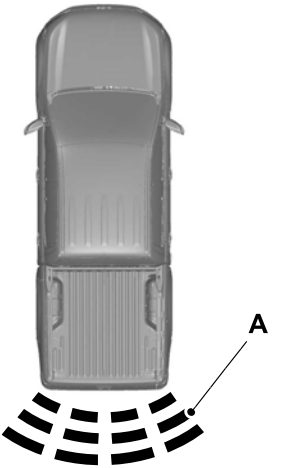
When the parking aid system produces an audible warning, the audio system may reduce the set volume to a predetermined level.

**Note:** *Some add-on equipment can cause reduced performance or false activation. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks.*

**Note:** *The parking aid system sensors must be kept clean and free from snow or ice to avoid reduced performance or false activation. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If the parking aid sensors are misaligned due to vehicle bumper damage it will cause reduced performance or false activation.*

The rear parking aid sensors turn on automatically when you move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) and your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 5 km/h. Moving your vehicle closer to a large object will increase the audible warning repeat rate. When the object is less than 30 cm from the center of your vehicle's rear bumper the audible warning will sound continuously.




E205544

A. Sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm from the rear bumper.

**Note:** *There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.*

The system detects large objects when you move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R):

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Shift the transmission from reverse (R) or press the parking aid button or a soft button in the cluster menu to switch the system off. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on. See **Information Messages** (page 77).

## FRONT PARKING AID

**WARNINGS**

The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. Take care when using the system to avoid personal injury.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist you in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes and external motors and fans may affect correct operation of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false alerts.

### Front Sensing System

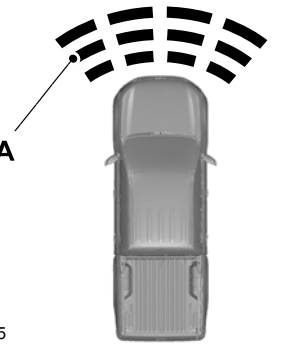
The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P).

You can also press the parking aid button (if equipped) or use the settings menu in the information menus to switch the front parking aid system on without selecting reverse (R).

**Note:** *Keep the sensors located on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false beeps.*

When the parking aid system produces an audible warning, the audio system may reduce the set volume to a predetermined level.




E205545

A. Sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm from the front bumper and 15–35 cm to the side of the front bumper.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 30 cm or less from the front bumper.

The system automatically turns off when your vehicle speed reaches 12 km/h.

The system detects objects when:

- Your vehicle is moving forward at low speed.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Press the parking aid button to switch (if equipped) to turn the system off. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on. See **Information Messages** (page 77).

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle.

### Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the gearshift is in neutral (N), the system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. If your vehicle moves the front sensing system provides an audible warning when the vehicle is moving at 12 km/h or below and an obstacle is located inside the detection area.

If the gearshift is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the front sensing system provides audio warnings when the vehicle is moving below 12 km/h and an obstacle is located inside the detection area.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA (If Equipped)

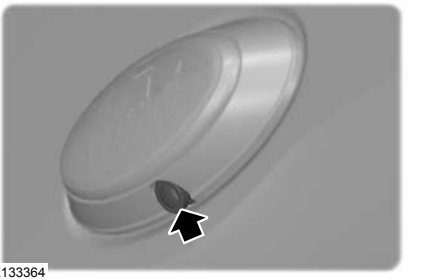
**WARNINGS**

The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.

Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is located on the tailgate below the badge.



E133364

### Switching the Rear View Camera On

**WARNING**

The camera may not detect objects that are close to your vehicle.

Switch the ignition and the audio unit on.

Move the transmission selector lever to reverse.

The image is displayed on the rear view mirror screen.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

The camera may not operate correctly in the following conditions:

- Dark areas.
- Intense light.
- If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
- If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
- If the camera's view is obstructed, for example by mud.

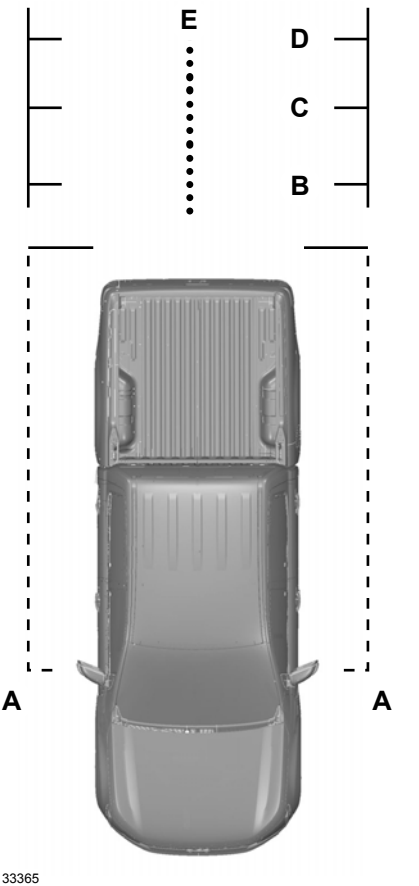
## Using the Display

**WARNINGS**

Obstacles above the camera position will not be shown. Inspect the area behind your vehicle if necessary.

Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

The lines show the distance from the outer edge of the front tire plus two inches (51 millimeters) and the rear bumper.




E133365

A Exterior mirror clearance - 4 inches (0.1 meter).

B Red - up to 12 inches (0.3 meter).

C Amber - 39 inches (1 meter).

D Green - 79 inches (2 meter).

E Black - center line of the projected vehicle path.

**Note:** *When reversing with a trailer, the lines on the screen are not shown. The camera will show your vehicle direction and not the trailer.*

## Switching the Rear View Camera Off

**Note:** *Move the transmission selector lever from reverse gear. The display will switch off after a short period.*

**Note:** *The system will automatically switch off once your vehicle speed has reached approximately 15 km/h.*

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING**

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed approximately 30 km/h.

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

**WARNINGS**

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on winding roads or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear to assist the system in maintaining the set speed. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

**Note:** *Cruise control will disengage if your vehicle speed decreases more than 16 km/h below your set speed while driving uphill.*

The cruise control switches are located on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On




E201284

Press the button.

#### Setting a Speed

- Accelerate to the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+**.



The warning indicator will display in the instrument cluster.

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

#### Changing the Set Speed

- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed will change in approximately 1 km/h (1 mph) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.

#### Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The system will not erase the set speed.

#### Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES** .



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Switching Cruise Control Off

**Note:** *You will erase the set speed if you switch the system off.*

Press and release **OFF** or switch the ignition off.

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

**WARNINGS**

Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

**WARNINGS**

Do not use the system when towing a trailer with brake controls. Aftermarket trailer brakes will not operate when you switch the system on because the brakes are electronically controlled. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.*

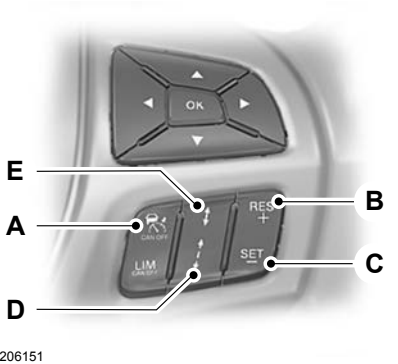
The system is designed to help you maintain a gap from the vehicle in front of you. If there is no vehicle in front of you the system will maintain a set speed. The system is intended to provide enhanced operation of your vehicle when following other vehicles which are in the same lane and traveling in the same direction. You can select from one of four gap settings.

The system is based on the use of a radar sensor which projects a beam directly forward of your vehicle.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Adaptive Cruise Controls



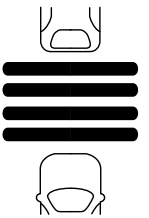

E206151

| | |
|---|---|
| A | On, off and cancel. |
| B | Set speed increase and resume. |
| C | Set speed and speed decrease. |
| D | Gap increase. |
| E | Gap decrease. |

### Switching the System On

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CNCL/OFF** button.



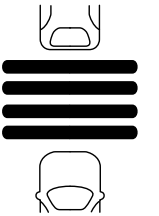


E164805

The cruise control indicator, **SET kph (mph)**, the current gap setting indicator and **Standby** displays in the instrument cluster.

### Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET-** or **RES+**.
3. The information display shows a green indicator light, current gap setting and desired set speed.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



E164805

5. When the system detects a vehicle in front of you, it will be displayed above the horizontal bars.

**Note:** *When adaptive cruise control is active, the set speed displayed in the information display may vary slightly from the speedometer.*

### Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET-** or **RES+**. The set speed changes in 5 km/h or 2 km/h increments depending on your vehicle.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET-** or **RES+**.
- Press and hold **SET-** or **RES+**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Canceling the Set Speed

Press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal for an extended period, or press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CNCL/OFF** button. The last set speed displays with a strikethrough.

### Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES+**. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display while the system is active.

### Switching the System Off

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CNCL/OFF** button when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

### Following a Vehicle

**WARNINGS**

When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap.

The lead vehicle graphic illuminates.

Your vehicle maintains a constant gap behind the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 20 km/h.
- A new gap is set.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap from the vehicle in front. The maximum braking which the system can apply is limited. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

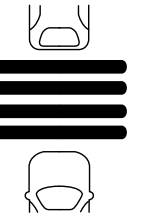
If the system predicts that its maximum braking level is insufficient, an audible warning sounds while the system continues to brake. The red warning bar appears on the windshield. You should take immediate action.

**Note:** *The brakes may emit a sound when modulated by the adaptive cruise control system.*

### Setting the Gap

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

You can decrease or increase the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you by pressing the gap control.



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the graphic. You can select from one of four gap settings.

**Note:** *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance will automatically adjust with your speed.*

**Adaptive cruise control gap settings**

| Set speed<br>km/h | Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles | Time gap, seconds | Gap<br>m |
|---|---|---|---|
| 100 | 1 | 0.8 | 28 |
| 100 | 2 | 1.2 | 39 |
| 100 | 3 | 1.6 | 50 |
| 100 | 4 | 2.1 | 61 |

**Note:** *The system status and settings will remain unchanged each time you switch the ignition on.*

## Overriding the System

**WARNING**

Whenever the driver is overriding the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, the system does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

You can override the set speed and gap by pressing the accelerator pedal.

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the set speed text darkens.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## Automatic Cancellation

The system does not operate below 20 km/h. An audible warning sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

**Note:** *If the engine speed drops too low, the information display indicates low engine speed. Shift to a lower gear (manual transmission only) to avoid automatic cancellation.*

## Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear position when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating.

**Note:** *An audible warning sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool down. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled down.*



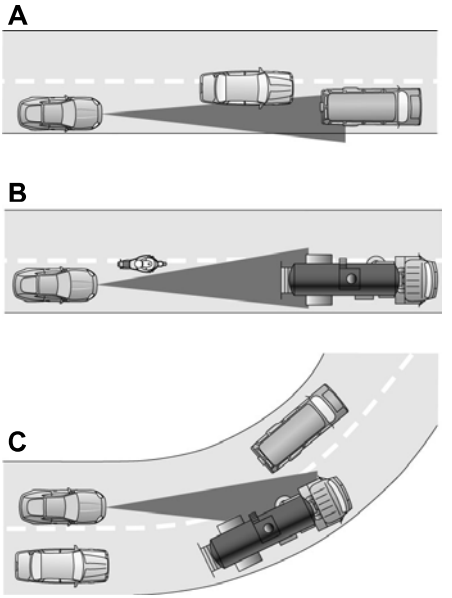
Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Detection Issues

**WARNING**

On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.




Detection issues can occur:

A With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.

B Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all.

C With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend. The detection beam will not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

## Blocked Sensor

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is located on the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something obstructs the radar signals.

Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors and aftermarket lights may also block the sensor.

**The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying.**

| Cause | Action |
|---|---|
| The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way. | Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction. |
| The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display. | Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction. |
| Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals. | Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead. |
| Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals. | Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead. |

It is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after a key cycle.

## Switching to Normal Cruise Control

**WARNING**

Normal cruise control does not brake due to slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and automatic braking does not activate. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

# SPEED LIMITER

## Principle of Operation

**WARNING**

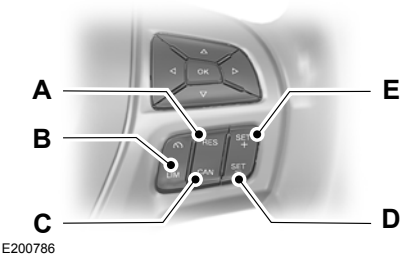
When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

## Using the System

**Note:** *If you briefly press the accelerator, for example when overtaking another vehicle, the system temporarily turns off.*

**The system is operated by the controls mounted on the steering wheel.**




A Resume.
B On and off.
C Cancel.
D Set speed decrease.
E Set speed increase.

### Switching the System On and Off

Press switch **B**. The information display will prompt you to set a speed.

### Setting the Speed Limiter

Use the cruise control switches to adjust the maximum speed setting.

Press switch **E** or **D** to select your desired speed limit. The set speed is stored and displayed in the information display.

Press switch **C** to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm the system is in standby mode by displaying the set speed limit as crossed out.

Press switch **A** again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm this has been turned on by showing the set speed again.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limiter Set Speed

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The speed limiter set speed resumes when your vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit.

### System Warnings

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, a warning will flash in the information display and a warning chime will sound.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning will flash in the information display.

# DRIVER ALERT

## Principle of Operation

**WARNINGS**

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**WARNINGS**


At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.


If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.


Take regular rest breaks as required and do not wait for the system to warn you if you feel tired.


Take rest breaks only where it is safe to do so.


Certain driving styles and behavior may result in the system issuing a warning even if you are not feeling tired.


In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.


The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.


The system may not operate in areas during roadwork construction.


The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.


Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.


If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** *Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

**Note:** *The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

**Note:** *The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h.*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## Using Driver Alert

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** *The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.*

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 68).

The system will calculate your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

### System Warnings

**Note:** *The system will not issue warnings below approximately 65 km/h.*

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it will issue a further warning. This will remain in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 77).

Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

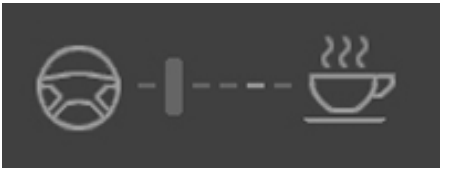


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**System Display**

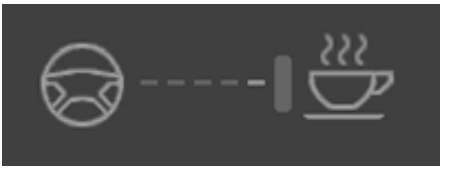
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 68).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that you should take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green: No rest required.
- Yellow: First (temporary) warning.
- Red: Second warning.

Your alertness level will be shown in grey if:

- the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings
- your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

**Resetting the System**

You can reset the system by:

- switching the ignition off and on
- stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

**WARNINGS**

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray can all limit sensor performance.

Large contrasts in lighting can limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

The vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer for inspection if damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** *The system works above 64 km/h.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

**Note:** *The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.*

**Note:** *When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.*

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

## Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** *The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey it defaults to on and the mode is set to Alert.*

**Note:** *If a MyKey is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system.*

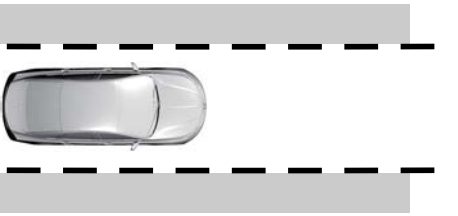


Press the button on the steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

### System Settings

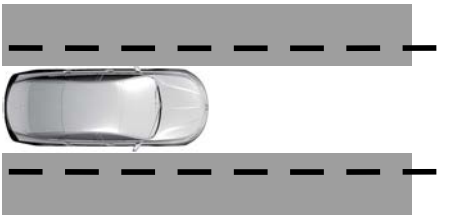
The system has optional setting menus available. To view or adjust the settings, See **General Information** (page 68). The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

**Mode:** This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



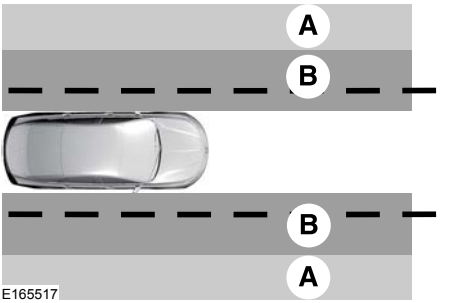
E165515

Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.




A Alert

B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

**Note:** *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

**Intensity:** This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

- Low
- Normal
- High

**System Display**




When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, a separate white icon will also appear or in some vehicles arrows will display with the lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.

- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

**Troubleshooting**

| Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road? |
|---|
| Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature |
| Sun is shining directly into the camera lens |
| Quick intentional lane change |
| Staying too close to the lane marking |
| Driving at high speeds in curves |
| The last Alert warning or Aid intervention occurred a short time ago |
| Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones) |
| Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa |
| Sudden offset in lane markings |
| ABS or AdvanceTrac activation |
| Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield |
| Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you |
| Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa |
| Standing water on the road |
| Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads) |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road? |
|---|
| Lane width too narrow or too wide |
| Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement |
| Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads |

| Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode? |
|---|
| High cross winds |
| Large road crown |
| Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs |
| Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure |
| If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified |

# STEERING

## Electric Power Steering

**WARNINGS**

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Obtain immediate service from an authorized dealer, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

### Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

**Note:** *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.*

### Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

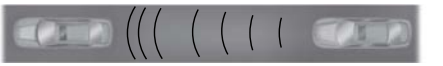
**WARNINGS**

This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

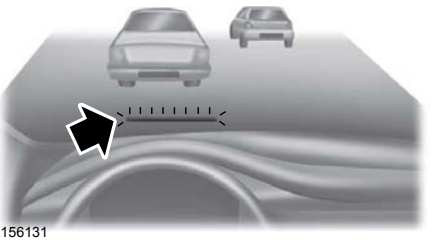
**Note:** *The system does not detect, warn or respond to potential collisions with vehicles to the rear or sides of your vehicle.*

**Note:** *The Pre-Collision Assist system is active at speeds above approximately 5 km/h.*



E156130

The system alerts you of certain collision risks. The system's sensor detects your vehicle's rapid approach to other vehicles traveling in the same direction as your vehicle.



E156131

When your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, a red light bar flashes in the windscreen (refer to image), a warning lamp with the words "Pre-collision Assist" is displayed in the instrument cluster and a tone sounds.

The brake support system assists you in reducing any collision speed by pre-charging the brakes. If the risk of collision continues to increase after the audio-visual warning, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. The system does not automatically activate the brakes, but can provide supplementary braking power if the brake pedal is pressed even lightly.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

**WARNING**

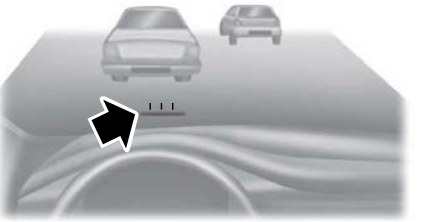
The Pre-Collision Assist system's brake support reduces collision speed only if you brake your vehicle before any collision. You must press your brake pedal as you would in any typical braking situation.

You can adjust the warning system's sensitivity through your information display. See **General Information** (page 68). .

**Note:** *When possible, the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting. If warnings are too frequent, you can reduce your system's sensitivity. Reduced sensitivity causes fewer and later system warnings. See* ***General Information*** *(page 68). .*

### Distance Alert

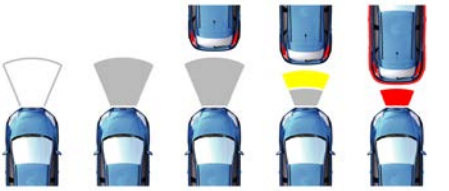
If the system detects that your vehicle is too close to the vehicle in front based on the current sensitivity setting (see Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings section below) the centre section of the red light bar in the windscreen will illuminate (refer to image).



E184570

### Distance Indication

Distance indication is a function that provides a graphical indication of the time gap to other vehicles traveling in the same direction.



E190004

**Note:** *Distance Alert and Distance Indication deactivates when adaptive cruise control is active. The distance indication graphics do not display in the information display unless adaptive cruise control is OFF.*

| Speed | Sensitivity | Graphics | Distance Gap | Time Gap |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 62mph (100km/h) | Normal | Grey | >25m | >0.9sec |
| 62mph (100km/h) | Normal | Yellow | between 17m and 25m | between 0.6sec and 0.9sec |
| 62mph (100km/h) | Normal | Red | <17m | <0.6sec |



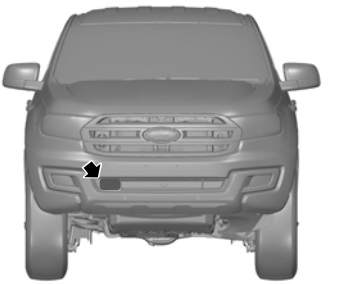
Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### *Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings*

You can adjust the Pre-Collision Assist and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 68).

You can switch the distance alert and indication function off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 68).

### Blocked Sensors



E223376

If a blocked sensor message appears in the information display, dirt, water, or an object is blocking the sensor. The sensor is located behind a cover near the driver side of the lower grille. If anything blocks the sensor, your vehicle cannot see through the sensor, and the pre-collision assist system will not work. Possible causes for the blocked sensor message and corrective actions are listed below.

| Cause | Action |
|---|---|
| The radar sensor cover in the grille is dirty or obstructed | Clean the radar sensor cover or remove the obstruction |
| The surface of the radar sensor cover is clean but the message remains in the display | Wait a short time. The radar may take several minutes to reset after you remove the obstruction |
| Heavy rain, spray, snow or fog in the air interferes with the radar signals | The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Shortly after weather conditions improve, the collision warning system automatically reactivates |
| Swirling water, snow or ice on the road surface interferes with the radar signals | The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Shortly after weather conditions improve, the collision warning system automatically reactivates |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### System Limitations

**WARNING**

The Pre-Collision Assist system's brake support reduces collision speed only if you brake your vehicle before any collision. You must press your brake pedal as you would in any typical braking situation.

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles do not provide a collision warning. These include:

- Stationary vehicles or slow moving vehicles.
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- Severe weather conditions (see blocked sensor section).
- Debris build-up on the grille near the headlamps (see blocked sensor section).
- Small distance to vehicle ahead.
- Large steering wheel and pedal movements (very active driving style).

Damage to the front end of your vehicle may alter the radar sensor's coverage area. This may result in missed or false collision warnings. Have an authorized dealer check your radar sensor for proper coverage and operation.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNINGS**

Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.

Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.

Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.

Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 302).

Do not place solid objects outside the loadspace area for example timber and sheet material.

**Note:** *The center of the payload should be located within the wheelbase of the vehicle.*

**Note:** *Avoid one sided load distribution.*

**Note:** *Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.*

## LUGGAGE COVERS

**WARNINGS**

Do not move your vehicle with people or animals in the loadspace.

Do not use the roller shutter pull strap to secure loads.

Do not sit, stand or place anything on the roller shutter.

**WARNINGS**

To service the roller shutter, see an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *You must secure the loads carried in the loadspace.*

**Note:** *Use the pull strap to close the roller shutter.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the roller shutter is free of any obstruction before you open or close it. For example; snow or ice.*

**Note:** *Water and dust may enter the loadspace with the roller shutter closed.*

### Operation

The roller shutter has four locking positions:

1. Fully closed.
2. 1/3 open.
3. 2/3 open.
4. Fully open.

**Note:** *The locking mechanism does not lock automatically as it passes each locking position.*

### Locking and unlocking into position

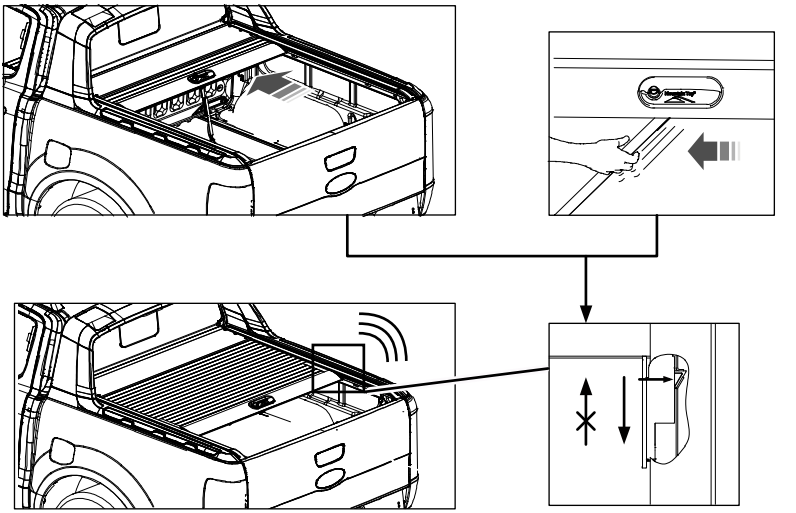
**Note:** *You will hear a click as the roller shutter passes each locking position.*

**Note:** *Use the pull strap to control the roller shutter movement while opening.*

Lock the roller shutter at the required locking position by pulling the pull strap to the left.

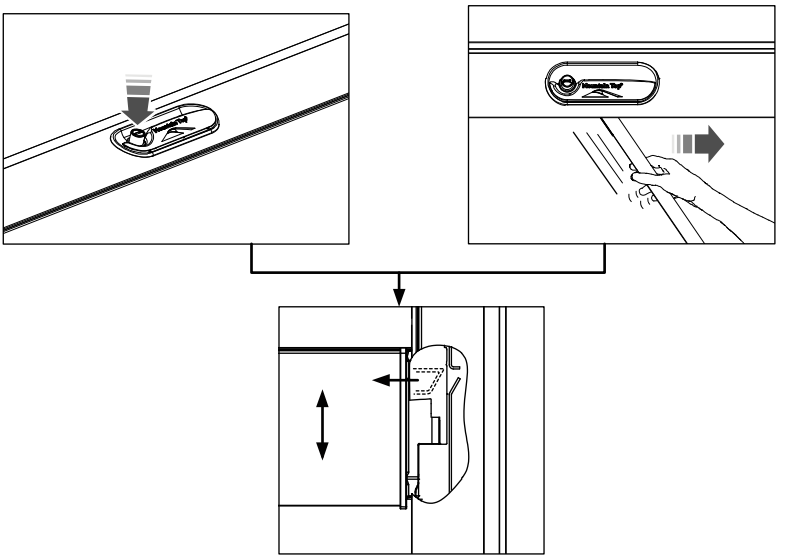


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015



E154609

Unlock the roller shutter by pulling the pull strap to the right or by pressing the lock buttons.



E154610

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

**WARNINGS**

If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

Read and follow the manufacturers instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

**WARNINGS**

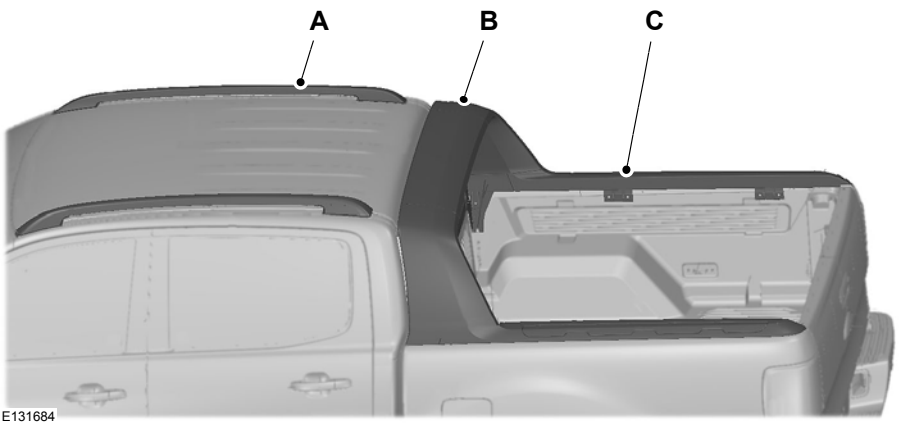
Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof rail load of 80 kg, including the roof rack.

Check the security of the roof rack load:

- Before starting.
- After driving 50 km.
- At 1,000 km intervals.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015




A Roof Rail.
B Sports bar.
C Box rail.

**Note:** *Do not sit or stand on items B or C.*

**Note:** *Do not use item C to secure loads.*

**Note:** *To reduce fuel consumption, roof rack cross bars and accessories should be removed when not in use.*

## LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES

### Tie Down Points

**WARNINGS**

Use the tie down points only for restraining the loads within the loadspace. Using tie down points for any other purpose may lead to serious injury or vehicle damage. Do not use the tie down points for towing.

Each tie down point has a maximum load rating. Exceeding this may lead to serious injury and vehicle damage.

**WARNINGS**

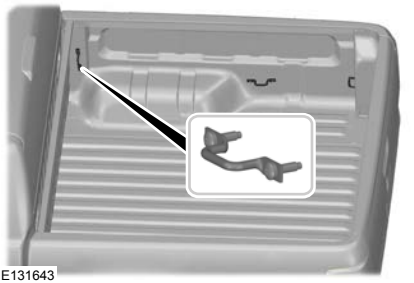
Always inspect the tie down points before use.

**Note:** *The number of tie down points may vary depending on your vehicle model.*

**Type 1**

**WARNING**

Do not exceed the load rating for the tie down points.

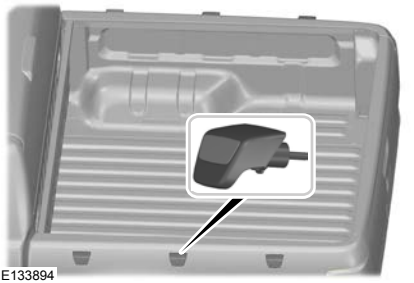

E131643

Load Rating of Type 1 Tie Down Points: 300 kg.

**Type 2**

**WARNING**

Do not exceed the load rating for the tie down points.


E133894

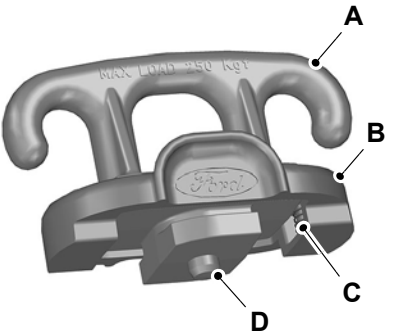
Load Rating of Type 2 Tie Down Points: 200 kg.

**Type 3**

**WARNING**

Do not exceed the load rating for the tie down points.


E133896



E134098

A Cleat.
B Bezel.
C Spring.
D Pin.

Do not use the tie down points under the following conditions:

- Any sign of wear or damage.
- Rail channels supporting the tie down points show any sign of wear, damage or distortion.

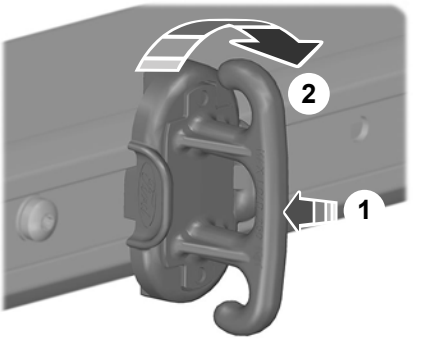
- Locking bezel is damaged or broken or will not lock into place.
- Not seated correctly within the support rail.

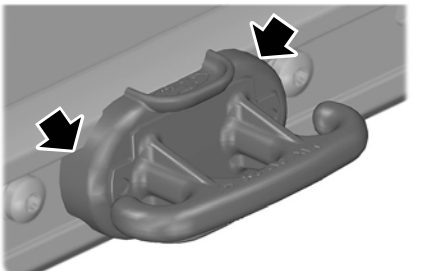
Load Rating of Type 3 Tie Down Points (Rope Hook): 250 kg.

### Fitting the Type 3 Tie Down Points

**WARNING**

Bezel must be fully engage into the rail to secure the tie down point for safe use. The word 'Not Locked' will be visible in the incorrectly installed tie downs.



E134099

1. Engage the base of the tie down point into the rail channel while holding the cleat vertically.
2. Slide along the rail until the pin on the base of the tie down engages in a desired hole on the rail.
3. Push the tie down in and rotate a quarter turn clockwise until the tie down cleat is horizontal and the locking bezel "snaps" into place.

### Removing the Type 3 Tie Down Points

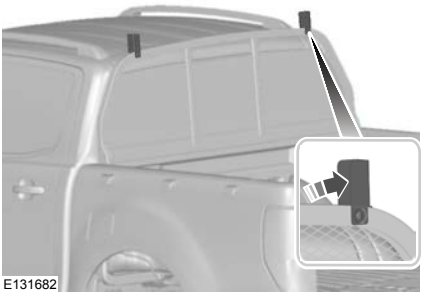
1. Grasp the locking bezel between the thumb and fingers using the finger recess.
2. Pull the bezel away from the rail until the base of the tie down point is fully disengaged from the rail channel.
3. Turn the tie down point a quarter turn anticlockwise until it snaps out of the rail.

## Load Rest

**WARNINGS**

A loaded load rest alters the vehicle's center of gravity and aerodynamics. Take care when cornering, driving in crosswinds and at high speeds.

Do not exceed the permissible gross weight. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 302).




**Note:** *Secure luggage or cargo placed on the load rest with the load rest stoppers.*

## TAILGATE

**WARNINGS**

Do not exceed the maximum permissible tailgate load of 220 kg.

Vehicles fitted with a tow bar or rear bumper should not have the tailgate lowered without the support cables in place.

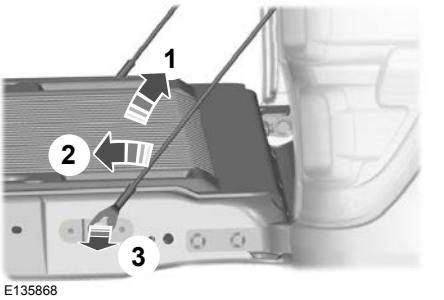
Make sure that you keep a firm grip of the tailgate to prevent it from dropping down.

### Lowering the Tailgate

**WARNINGS**

Do not lower the tailgate if a load bed extension is fitted.

Maximum permissible load for a tailgate with load bed extension is 50 kg.




1. Raise the tailgate slightly.
2. Pull the support cable rearwards.
3. Release the support cable from tailgate.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to pull out the support cable on the other side.

**Note:** *Lower the tailgate for better ingress or egress of the loads.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## TOWING A TRAILER

**WARNINGS**


Do not exceed 100 km/h


Do not exceed the maximum permissible gross train weight stated. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 176).


Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, e.g. vertical weight on the tow ball. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 176).


Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle load stated on your vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 302).


The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer.

**Note:** *Vehicles equipped with electronic stability control (ESC) have trailer stability control included.*

**When towing a trailer:**

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. For best stability of the trailer in an unladen vehicle, place the load in the trailer towards the nose within the maximum nose load as this gives the best stability. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 176).
- Reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m in high altitude regions above 1,000 m.
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

**Note:** *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *Switching off the stability control will turn off the system.*

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Trailer sway control is an enhanced feature of stability control system and automatically detects when an attached trailer starts to sway. This feature applies your vehicle brakes at individual wheels and if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 175).

**Note:** *Shifting to 4x4 Low will deactivate trailer sway control.*

**Note:** *Switching on the electronic locking differential will turn off the system.*

**Note:** *To switch off the trailer sway control as required, See **Stability Control** (page 138).*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

### Towing Capacities - For Base Series

| Variant | Drive | Transmission | Without Trailer Brake | With Trailer Brake | Max. Gross Train Weight |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.5L Gasoline | 4X2 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,425 kg |
| | 4x2 * Drive ratio 5.3 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,525 kg |
| | 4x2* Drive ratio 4.7 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,100 kg | 4,125 kg |
| | 4x4 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,100 kg | 4,125 kg |
| 2.2L Diesel 88kW | 4X2 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,425 kg |
| | 4x4 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,525 kg |
| 2.2L Diesel 92kW | 4x2* and 4x4 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,525 kg |
| 2.2L Diesel 110kW | 4x2 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,425 kg |
| | 4x2* and 4x4 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,700 kg |
| 3.2L Diesel | 4x2* and 4x4 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,500 kg | 4,700 kg |

### Towing capacities- For all other series

| Variant | Drive | Transmission | Without Trailer Brake | With Trailer Brake | Max. Gross Train Weight |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.5L Gasoline | 4X2 | Manual | 750 kg | 2,200 kg | 5,125 kg |
| | 4x2 * Drive ratio 5.3 FDR | Manual | 750 kg | 1,700 kg | 4,900 kg |
| | 4x2* Drive ratio 4.7 FDR | Manual | 750 kg | 1,100 kg | 4,300 kg |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Variant | Drive | Transmis-sion | Without Trailer Brake | With Trailer Brake | Max. Gross Train Weight |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 4x4 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,100 kg | 4,300 kg |
| 2.2L Diesel 88kW & 92kW | 4X2 | Manual | 750 kg | 2,200 kg | 5,125 kg |
| | 4x2* and 4x4 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,600 kg | 4,800 kg |
| 2.2L Diesel 110kW | 4x2 | Manual | 750 kg | 2,500 kg | 5,425 kg |
| | 4x2 * Drive ratio 3.31/3.15 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,800 kg | 5,000 kg |
| | 4x2 * and 4x4 Drive ratio 3.55 | Manual | 750 kg | 3,500 kg | 6,000 kg |
| | 4x2 * and 4x4 | Auto | 750 kg | 3,500 kg | 6,000 kg |
| 3.2L Diesel | 4x2 * and 4x4 Drive ratio 3.31/3.15 | Manual | 750 kg | 1,800 kg | 5,000 kg |
| | 4x2* and 4x4 Drive ratio 3.55 | Manual | 750 kg | 3,500 kg | 6,000 kg |
| | 4x2* and 4x4 | Auto | 750 kg | 3,500 kg | 6,000 kg |
| 2.2L Diesel / 3.2L Diesel | SWB Chassis Cab | All | No Towing | No Towing | No Towing |

*Vehicles with increased ride height



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Trailer Nose Weight

**WARNING**


Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, e.g. vertical weight on the tow ball. This is important for vehicle and trailer stability.

| Drive | Minimum Nose Weight | Maximum Nose Weight |
|---|---|---|
| 4x2 | 10% of the towed weight | 165 kg |
| 4x2 * and 4x4 | | 225 kg |

*Vehicles with increased ride height



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## TOW BALL

**WARNINGS**

Never leave the detached tow ball arm unsecured inside the vehicle. This would increase the risk of injury in an accident.

When not in use, always transport the tow ball arm securely fastened inside the luggage compartment.

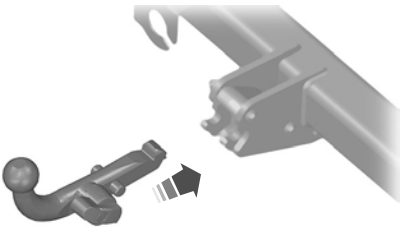
Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of the vehicle and the trailer depends on this.

Do not modify the trailer coupling.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

### Type 1

#### Inserting the tow ball arm



E137325

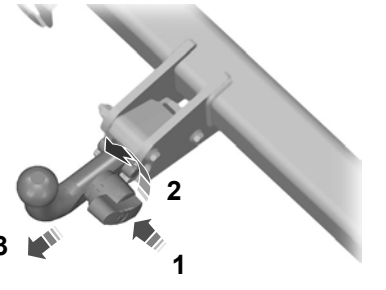
**WARNING**

Make sure that the tow ball arm is fully engaged in the seat.

**Note:** *A trailer socket and the tow ball arm seat are provided underneath the rear bumper.*

1. Insert the tow ball arm in to the seat.
2. Turn the trailer socket down through 90 degrees until it engages in the correct position.

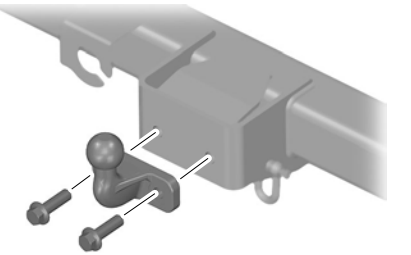
#### Removing the tow ball arm




E137326

1. Push the lever towards the centre of the vehicle.
2. Turn the lever anti-clockwise to unlock the tow ball arm.
3. Remove the tow ball arm.

### Type 2



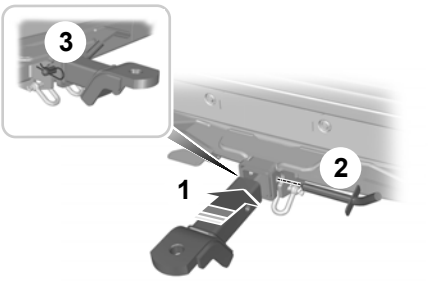
E139242

1. Tighten the bolts to 218 Nm



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Type 3




E207959

1. Insert the tow ball arm into the tow bar.
2. Insert the pin.
3. Secure the pin in place with the clip.

## Driving with a trailer

**WARNINGS**

If any of the below conditions cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorized dealer.

Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.

Before starting your journey

- Confirm that the tow ball arm is correctly engaged and locked in place.
- Install the plug (if equipped) into its seat.

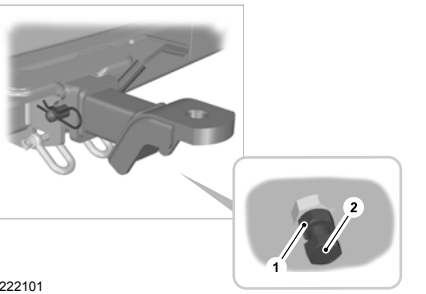
## Anti-rattle pinch bolt removal (If equipped)

**WARNINGS**

Tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt should be removed from towbar when towing.

**WARNINGS**

When not towing, the anti-rattle pinch bolt should be replaced, and lock nut tightened. Tightening torque must not exceed 47 Nm.




E222101

Remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt (1) by loosening the pinch bolt lock nut (2).

## Driving without a trailer

**Note:** *Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle when not in use.*

1. Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle and keep it securely fastened inside the luggage compartment.

## Maintenance

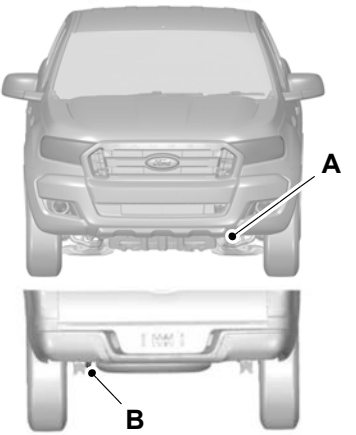
Keep the system clean.

Periodically lubricate the tow ball mechanism with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## TOWING POINTS



E207878

A Front towing eye.

B Rear towing eye.

**Note:** *Some towing points may be optional, depending on the vehicle.*

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### All Vehicles

**WARNINGS**

Switch the ignition on when towing the vehicle.

The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

**WARNINGS**

Do not use a rigid tow bar on the front towing eye.

When towing your vehicle you must select neutral.

Do not tow the vehicle with all wheels on the ground while in 4WD mode. Tow your vehicle with all wheels off the ground or all wheels on the ground while the vehicle is in 2WD mode in an event of a breakdown or mechanical failure of the transmission.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

### Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

**WARNINGS**

If a speed of 20 km/h and a distance of 20 km is to be exceeded the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.

It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move your vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h or further than 20 km.

Do not tow your vehicle backward.

In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.

Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0ºC.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

**WARNING**

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

**WARNING**

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

### Engine

**WARNING**

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

#### Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

## REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

**WARNING**

Continued operation of an overheating engine will increase the temperature further, and cause the engine to shut down completely.

Drive the overheating engine only for a brief amount of time to prevent permanent damage. The engine will continue to operate with limited power. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load, and terrain.

If the needle in the engine coolant temperature gauge moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 60).

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will also turn off and the engine cooling fan will operate.

When this happens, immediately:

- Stop your vehicle as soon as possible.
- Turn off the engine to prevent severe engine damage.
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 252).
- Have the vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25ºC.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

**WARNINGS**

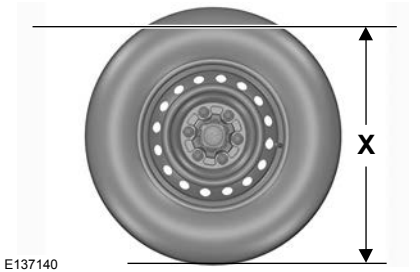
Drive through water in an emergency only and not as part of normal driving.

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

**Note:** *For Chassis Cab vehicles or where a 3rd party tray has been fitted, confirm the installation is in line with the Ford Body Builders Guide. This ensures fuel tank breathers and drive line breathers are located above the specified water wading lines.*

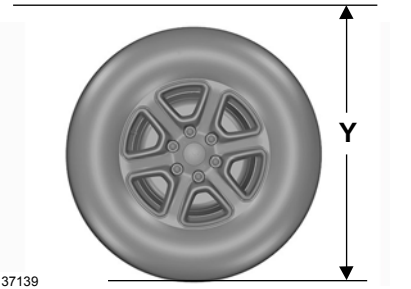
In an emergency, you can drive your vehicle through water to a maximum depth as shown and at a maximum speed of 7 km/h. You must take extra care when driving through flowing water.

**4x2**




X 600mm (23.6 inches)

**4x2 (Vehicles with Increased Ride Height) and 4x4**




Y 800mm (31.5 inches)

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop your vehicle. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly to check that the brakes are functioning correctly.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that your vehicle's lamps are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

## FLOOR MATS

**WARNINGS**

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**WARNINGS**

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel.

Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

**Note:** *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

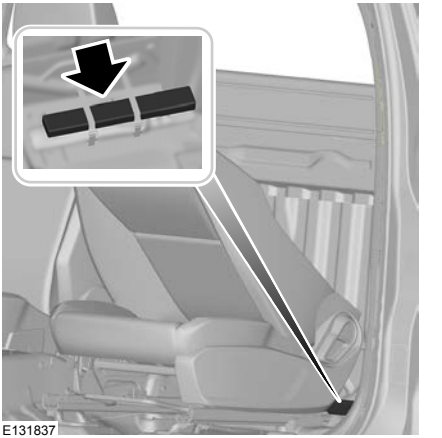
## FIRST AID KIT

**Note:** *Secure the first aid in a suitable secure location, such as the under seat storage, or with the vehicle tools.*

## WARNING TRIANGLE

### Single cab

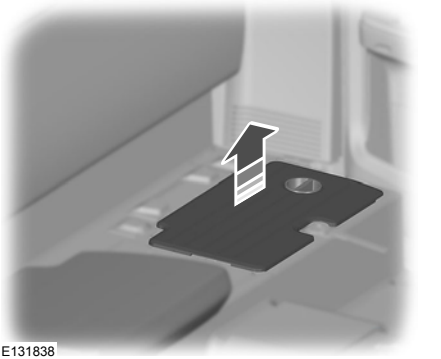
A retaining strap behind the passenger seat can be used to secure a warning triangle.




1 Fold the seatback forward.

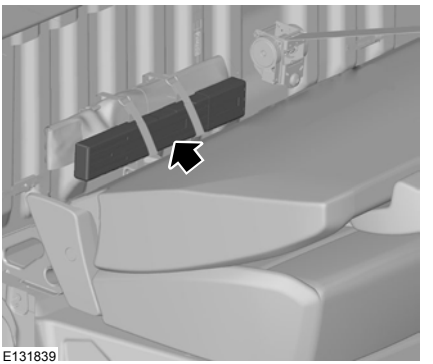
### Stretch cab

**Note:** *The warning triangle can be secured in the tool bin below the rear seats.*




1 Remove the rear seat cushion.
2 Remove the cover (if equipped).

### Double cab




1 Fold the rear seatback forward.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

**WARNINGS**

Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

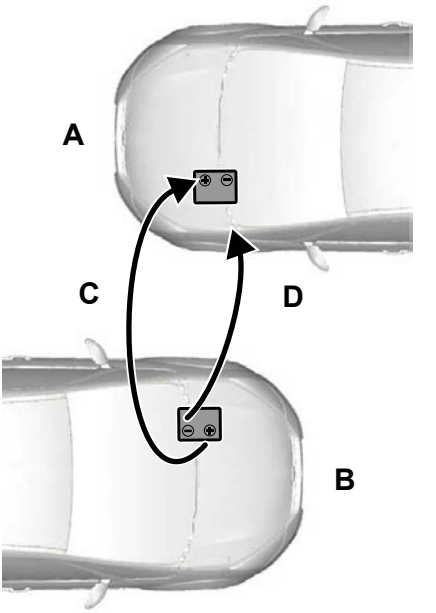
Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Never jump start the vehicle at the auxiliary battery (if equipped).

**Note:** *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

### Connecting the Jumper Cables




A Flat battery vehicle.
B Booster battery vehicle.
C Positive connection cable.
D Negative connection cable.

**WARNING**

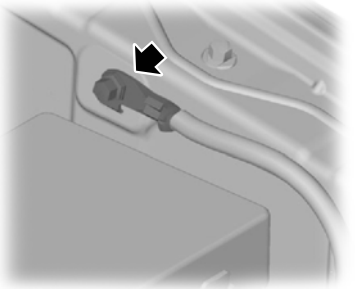
Do not let the vehicles come into contact when using booster cables.

1. Position the vehicles in a suitable arrangement to connect the booster cables.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).



E205764

**WARNINGS**

Do not connect directly to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.

Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).

### To Start the Engine

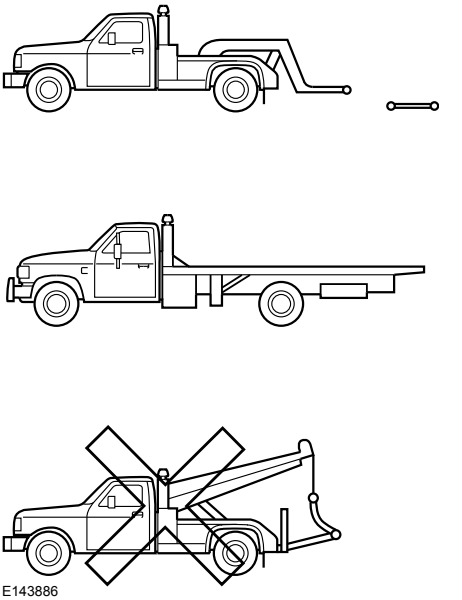
**WARNING**

Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

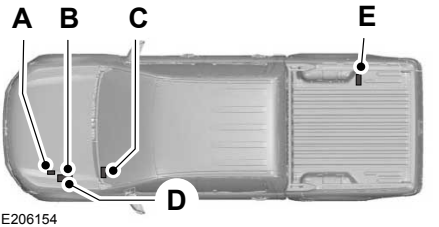
Towing an four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, four-wheel drive system and vehicle.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

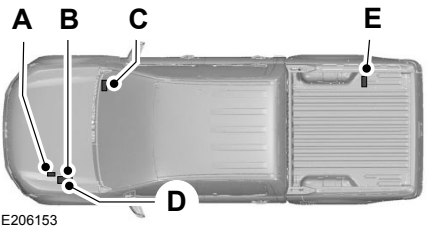
## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

### Left-Hand Drive



E206154

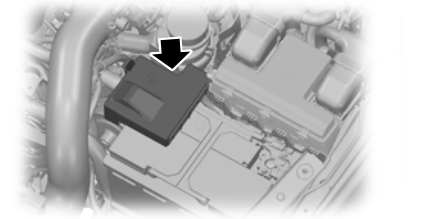
### Right-Hand Drive



E206153

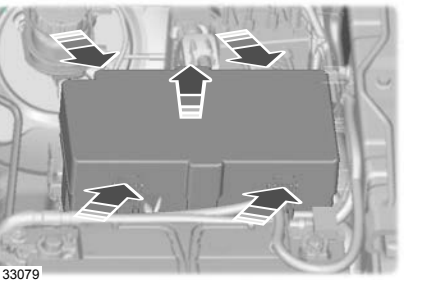
| | |
|---|---|
| A | Pre-fuse box (if equipped). |
| B | Engine compartment fuse box Type 1 / Engine compartment fuse box Type 2 (Power Distribution Box - PDB). |
| C | Passenger compartment fuse box. |
| D | High current fuse box (below the PDB) (if equipped). |
| E | Auxiliary fuse box (if equipped). |

### Pre-fuse Box (If Equipped)


E206156

Your vehicle has a pre-fuse box located in the engine compartment attached to the positive battery post. This box contains several high current fuses. If replacement of these high current fuses is required, see an authorized dealer.

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type 1

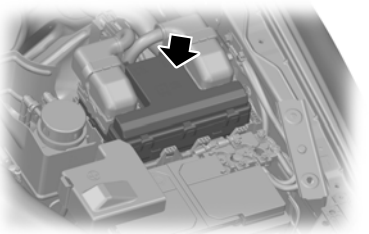

E133079

**WARNING**

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

Open the fuse box cover to access the fuses.

## Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Power Distribution Box - PDB) Type 2



E206157

**WARNINGS**

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

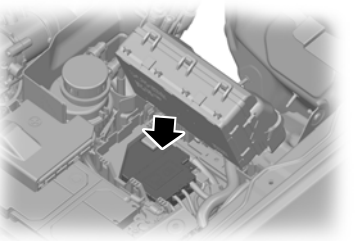
To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 255).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

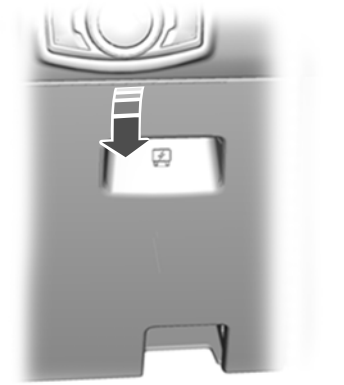
## High Current Fuse Box



E206158

Your vehicle has a pre-fuse box located in the engine compartment below the engine compartment fuse box. This box contains several high current fuses. If replacement of these high current fuses is required, see an authorized dealer.

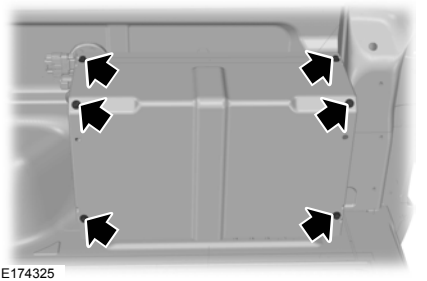
## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



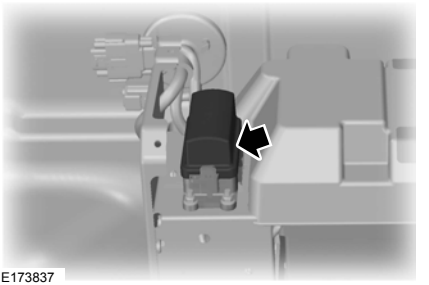
E206167

The fuse box is located behind the access cover on the outboard side of the steering column.

### Auxiliary Fuse Box



E174325



E173837

Release the catches and remove the cover.

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box - Type 1

**WARNINGS**

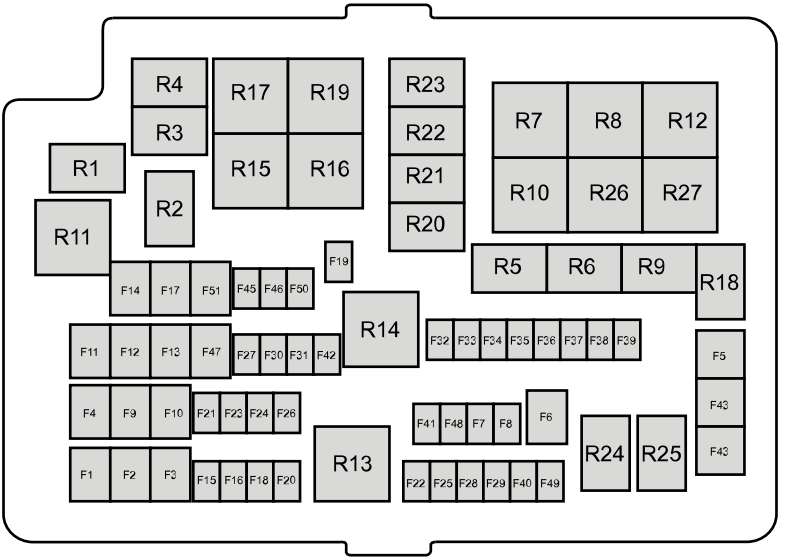
Always disconnect the battery before servicing high-current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 255). Lift the release levers at the rear of the cover to remove it.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015




E133601

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 60 | Passenger compartment fuse box supply (Battery). |
| 2 | 60 | Passenger compartment fuse box supply (Battery). |
| 3 (Petrol) | 50 | Engine cooling fan. |
| 3 (Diesel) | 60 | Glow plug control module. |
| 4 | 40 | Anti-lock brake system module. |
| 5 | 30 | Power windows (front and rear). |
| 6 | - | Not used. |
| 7 | - | Not used. |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | - | Not used. |
| 9 | 20 | Power seats. |
| 10 | 20 | Auxiliary power socket instrument panel, console top. |
| 11 | 30 | Blower motor. |
| 12 | 25 | Four wheel drive (4WD) motor power. |
| 13 | 20 | Starter solenoid. |
| 14 | 20 | Heated rear window. |
| 15 (Petrol) | 10 | Flex-fuel pump. |
| 15 (Diesel) | 20 | Vaporizer glow plug. |
| 16 | 10 | Air conditioning clutch. |
| 17 | 25 | Power windows (front). |
| 18 | 25 | Windscreen wiper motor. |
| 19 | - | Not used. |
| 20 | 20 | Cigar lighter. |
| 21 | 15 | Horn. |
| 22 | 15 | Fuel injectors, flex-fuel valve. |
| 23 | 10 | Differential lock solenoid. |
| 24 | - | Not used. |
| 25 | 15 | Ignition coils, temperature and mass air flow sensor, glow plug module, vacuum control valve (VCV), electronic vacuum regulator valve (EVRV). |
| 26 | 7.5 | Electronic control module (ECM). |
| 27 | 10 | Transmission control module (TCM). |
| 28 | 10 | Heated exhaust gas oxygen, universal heated exhaust gas oxygen-sensor, relay coils. |
| 29 | 15 | Electronic control module (ECM). |
| 30 | 5 | Battery monitoring sensor. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 31 | 20 | Auxiliary power socket (rear console). |
| 32 | 5 | Air conditioning pressure switch. |
| 33 | 10 | Transmission control module (TCM). |
| 34 | 5 | Crew chief module, Spare. |
| 35 | 20 | Passenger compartment fuse box supply (Ignition). |
| 36 | 5 | Anti-lock brake system module. |
| 37 | 10 | Headlamp leveling. |
| 38 | - | Not used. |
| 39 | 10 | Power mirrors. |
| 40 | 10 | Vapourizer pump. |
| 41 | 10 | Heated mirrors. |
| 42 | 10 | Alarm horn. |
| 43 | - | Not used. |
| 44 | - | Not used. |
| 45 | 25 | Anti-lock brake system module. |
| 46 | 20 | Battery isolator. |
| 47 | 40 | Trailer tow module. |
| 48 | - | Not used. |
| 49 | - | Not used. |
| 50 | 5 | Ignition relay, relay coils. |
| 51 | 20 | Trailer Tow (12/13pin Batt feed / Permanent Live. |

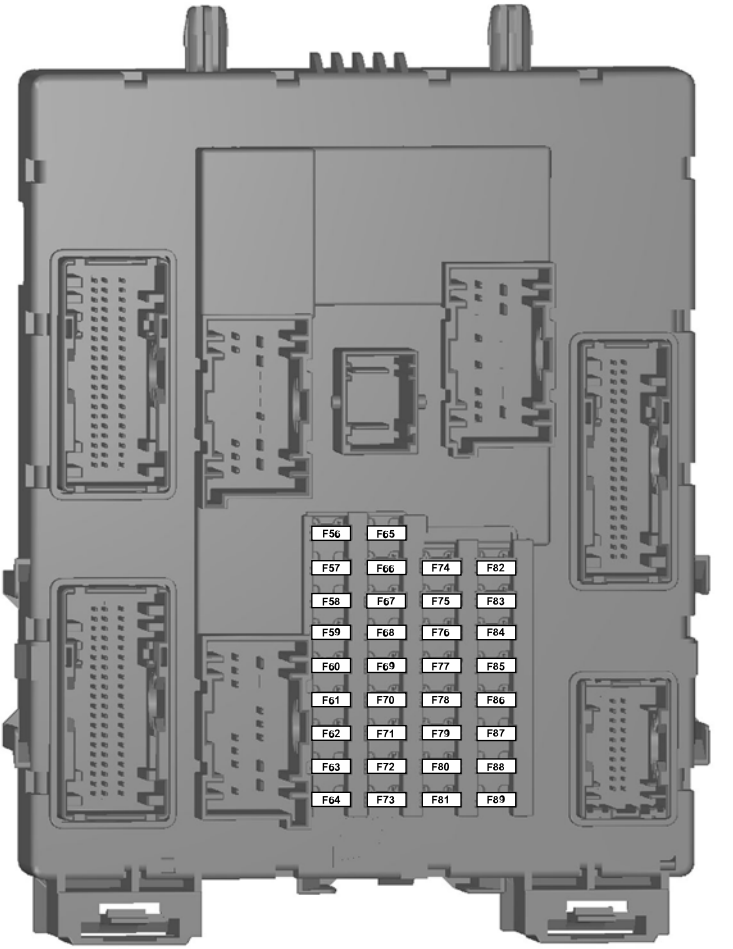
| Relay Number | Protected Components |
|---|---|
| R1 | Key interlock. |
| R2 | Wiper on or off. |
| R3 | Horn. |

| Relay Number | Protected Components |
|---|---|
| R4 | Air conditioning clutch. |
| R5 | Differential lock. |
| R6 | Wiper Hi or Lo. |
| R7 | Engine cooling fan low. |
| R8 | Engine cooling fan high. |
| R9 | Flex-fuel pump, vaporizer glow plug. |
| R10 | Heated rear window. |
| R11 | Not used. |
| R12 | Not used. |
| R13 | Electronic control module (ECM) power hold. |
| R14 | Ignition. |
| R15 | 4WD motor 2 (clockwise). |
| R16 | 4WD motor 1 (counter clockwise). |
| R17 | 4WD motor. |
| R18 | Security horn. |
| R19 | Starter. |
| R20 | Not used. |
| R21 | Not used. |
| R22 | Not used. |
| R23 | Not used. |
| R24 | Not used. |
| R25 | Not used. |
| R26 | Blower motor. |
| R27 | Power seat. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box - Type 1

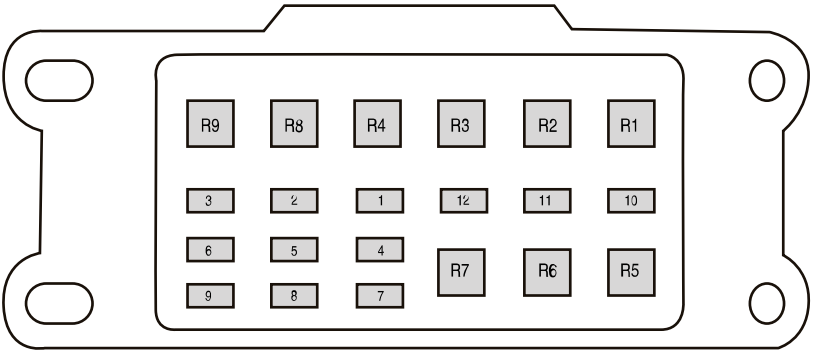



E133602

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 56 | 20 | Fuel pump. |
| 57 | - | Not used. |
| 58 | - | Not used. |
| 59 | 5 | Passive anti-theft system (PATS). |
| 60 | 10 | Interior lamp, driver's door switch pack, mood lights, puddle lights, automatic shifter, footwell lamp. |
| 61 | - | Not used. |
| 62 | 5 | Rain sensor module. |
| 63 | - | Not used. |
| 64 | - | Not used. |
| 65 | - | Not used. |
| 66 | 20 | Driver's door unlock, central double locking. |
| 67 | 5 | Stop lamp switch. |
| 68 | - | Not used. |
| 69 | 5 | Instrument cluster, integrated control module (ICP), tracking and blocking module. |
| 70 | 20 | Central locking. |
| 71 | 5 | Air conditioning. |
| 72 | 7.5 | Alarm horn. |
| 73 | 5 | On-board diagnostics II. |
| 74 | 20 | Main beam. |
| 75 | 15 | Front fog lamps. |
| 76 | 10 | Reversing lamp, rear view mirror. |
| 77 | 20 | Washer pump. |
| 78 | 5 | Ignition switch. |
| 79 | 15 | Audio signal DIN, FSAO audio, multi-function display. |
| 80 | 20 | Multi-function display, Hi audio, bluetooth audio. |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 81 | 5 | Interior motion sensor. |
| 82 | 20 | Washer pump ground. |
| 83 | 20 | Central locking ground. |
| 84 | 20 | Driver's door unlock, central double locking ground. |
| 85 | 7.5 | Instrument cluster, parking aid module, rear view camera, manual air conditioning, rear view mirror, tracking and blocking module. |
| 86 | 10 | Restraint system, passenger air-bag deactivation indicator. |
| 87 | 7.5 | Tachograph. |
| 88 | - | Not used. |
| 89 | - | Not used. |

## Auxiliary Fuse Box - Type 1




E174549

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 25 | Driving Light. |
| 2 | 15 | Position lamp. |
| 3 | 10 | LED beacon. |
| 4 | 15 | Work lights. |
| 5 | 20 | Spare. |
| 6 | 20 | Power point. |
| 7 | 15 | Reversing lamp. |
| 8 | 15 | Direction indicators, stop lamp. |
| 9 | 5 | Crew chief. |
| 10 | 5 | Disable fuse (isolator ground). |
| 11 | - | Not used. |
| 12 | - | Not used. |

| Relay Number | Protected Components |
|---|---|
| R1 | Work lights. |
| R2 | LED beacon. |
| R3 | Spare. |
| R4 | Position lamp. |
| R5 | Direction indicator (left). |
| R6 | Direction indicator (right). |
| R7 | Stop lamp. |
| R8 | Not used. |
| R9 | Not used. |

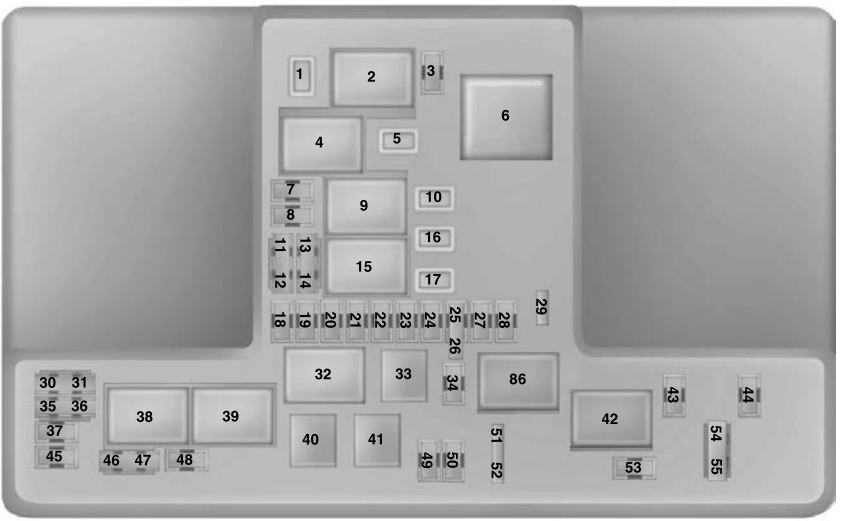
## Engine Compartment Fuse Box - Type 2 (2.2L Diesel)

**WARNINGS**

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high-current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 255). Lift the release levers at the rear of the cover to remove it.




E190797

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 25[3] | Not used. |
| 2 | - | Starter motor solenoid relay. |
| 3 | 15[1] | Rain sensor. |
| 4 | - | Blower motor relay. |
| 5 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>(Console rear). |
| 6 | - | - |
| 7 | 20[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 8 | 20[1] | Powertrain control module.<br>Volumetric control valve. EGR cooler bypass. TMAF. |
| 9 | - | Powertrain control module relay. |
| 10 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>1. |
| 11 | - | Not used. |
| 12 | 15[2] | Fan.<br>Glow plugs. |
| 13 | 15[2] | Not used. |
| 14 | 15[2] | Powertrain control module.<br>PCV Heater. (2.2L Diesel). |
| 15 | - | Starter relay. |
| 16 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>1. |
| 17 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>Rear cargo area. |
| 18 | 10[1] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 19 | 10[1] | Electric power assist steering. |
| 20 | 10[1] | Headlamp levelling. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| | | Lighting control. |
| 21 | - | Not used. |
| 22 | 10[1] | A/C clutch. |
| 23 | 15[1] | Rear parking aid camera.<br>Adaptive cruise control.<br>Head-up display (without start stop).<br>Voltage quality module (with start stop). |
| 24 | 5[1] | Air Conditioning pressure switch (Manual transmission vehicles only). |
| 25 | 10[2] | Anti-lock brake system. |
| 26 | 10[2] | Mirror adjust switch.<br>Tachograph. |
| 27 | 5[1] | Heater. PTC. |
| 28 | 10[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 29 | - | Not used. |
| 30 | - | Not used. |
| 31 | - | Not used. |
| 32 | - | Fuel pump relay. |
| 33 | - | A/C clutch relay. |
| 34 | 15[1] | Stop lamp.<br>Centre high mount. |
| 35 | 15[1] | Transmission control module. |
| 36 | - | Not used. |
| 37 | 10[1] | Heated exterior mirror. |
| 38 | - | Not used. |
| 39 | - | Four wheel drive power relay. |
| 40 | - | Center high mount stop lamp relay. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 41 | - | Horn relay. |
| 42 | - | Four wheel drive motor no. 2 relay. |
| 43 | - | - |
| 44 | 5[1] | Not used. (Spare). |
| 45 | 10[1] | Not used. (Spare). |
| 46 | 10[2] | Not used. (Spare). |
| 47 | 10[2] | Brake pedal switch. |
| 48 | 20[1] | Horn. |
| 49 | - | Not used. |
| 50 | - | Not used. |
| 51 | - | Not used. |
| 52 | - | Not used. |
| 53 | 10[1] | Rear differential lock. |
| 54 | - | Not used. |
| 55 | - | Not used. |
| 86 | - | Four wheel drive motor -no. 1 relay. |

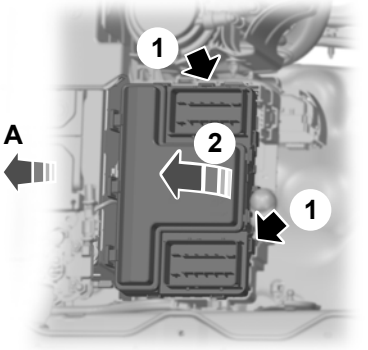
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

### Power Distribution Box - Bottom

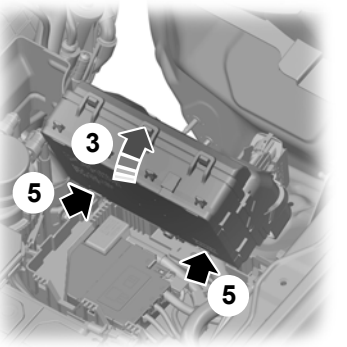
There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:




E206171

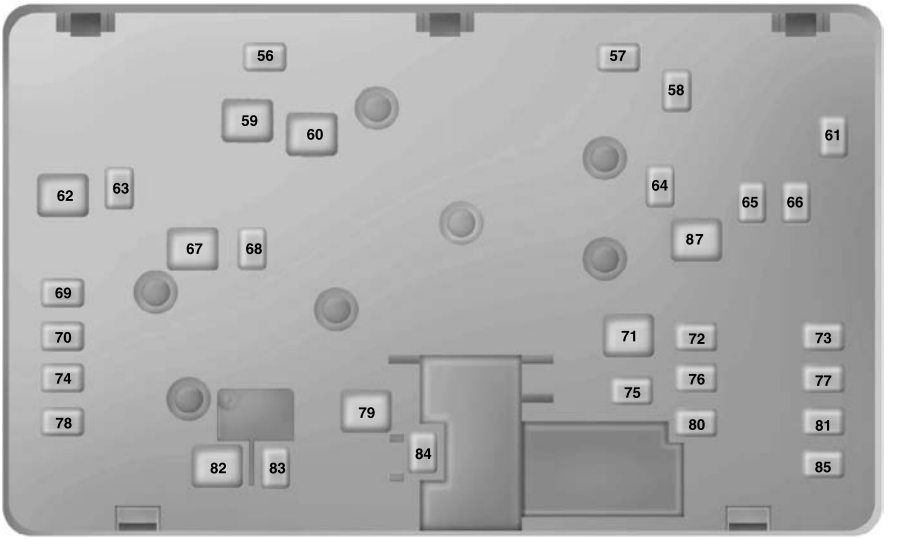
A Towards the front side of the vehicle.

1. Release the two latches located on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the rear side of the fuse box from the cradle.




E206174

3. Move the fuse box toward the rear side of the engine compartment and rotate as shown in the graphics.
4. Pivot the rear side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.
5. Release the two latches to open the fuse cover.




E190798

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 56 | - | Not used. |
| 57 | - | Not used. |
| 58 | - | Not used. |
| 59 | 25[4] | Four Wheel Drive. |
| 60 | 30[4] | Fuel Pump Control Module. |
| 61 | 30[3] | Windshield Defrost (left) (if fitted). |
| 62 | 50[4] | Body control module 1 (lighting). |
| 63 | - | Not used. |
| 64 | 20[3] | Trailer tow connector. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 65 | 20[3] | Heated front seats. |
| 66 | 30[3] | Windshield Defrost (right) (if fitted). |
| 67 | 50[4] | Body control module 2 (lighting). |
| 68 | 20[3] | Rear window defroster. |
| 69 | 30[3] | Anti-lock brake system valves. |
| 70 | - | Not used. |
| 71 | - | Not used. |
| 72 | - | Not used. |
| 73 | - | Not used. |
| 74 | 20[3] | Driver power seat. |
| 75 | - | Not used. |
| 76 | - | Not used. |
| 77 | - | Not used. |
| 78 | - | Not used. |
| 79 | 40[4] | Blower motor. |
| 80 | - | Not used. |
| 81 | 40[3] | Inverter. |
| 82 | 60[4] | Anti-lock brake system. |
| 83 | 25[3] | Windshield wiper motor. |
| 84 | 30[3] | Starter motor solenoid. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 85 | - | Not used. |
| 87 | 40[4] | Trailer module. |

[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

[4]LPJ-type fuse.

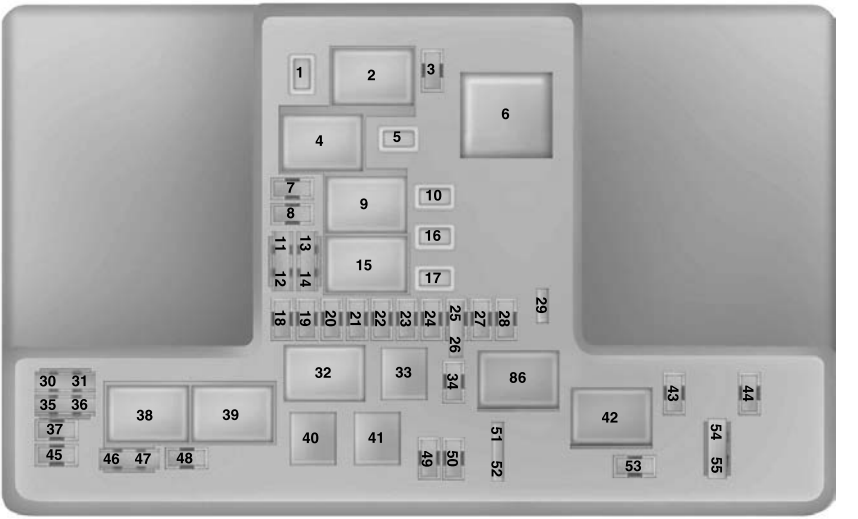
## Engine Compartment Fuse Box - Type 2 (3.2L Diesel)

**WARNINGS**

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high-current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 255). Lift the release levers at the rear of the cover to remove it.




E190797

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 25[3] | Not used. |
| 2 | - | Starter motor solenoid relay. |
| 3 | 15[1] | Rain sensor. |
| 4 | - | Blower motor relay. |
| 5 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>3. |
| 6 | - | Not used. |
| 7 | 20[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 8 | 20[1] | Powertrain control module.<br>Volumetric control valve. EGR cooler bypass. TMAF. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 9 | - | Powertrain control module.<br>Relay. |
| 10 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>1. |
| 11 | 15[2] | Not used.<br>Spare. |
| 12 | 15[2] | Fan drive. Glow plug control module. |
| 13 | 15[2] | Not used.<br>Spare. |
| 14 | 15[2] | Not used.<br>Spare. |
| 15 | - | Run/start relay. |
| 16 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>2 |
| 17 | 20[3] | Auxiliary power point.<br>4 |
| 18 | 10[1] | Not used. |
| 19 | 10[1] | Electric power assist steering. |
| 20 | 10[1] | Headlamp switch. Headlamp levelling motor. |
| 21 | - | Not used. |
| 22 | 10[1] | Air conditioning clutch. |
| 23 | 15[1] | Rear parking aid camera.<br>Adaptive cruise control.<br>Head-up display (without start stop).<br>Voltage quality module (with start stop). |
| 24 | 5[1] | Air Conditioning pressure switch (Manual transmission vehicles only). |
| 25 | 10[2] | Anti-lock brake system. |
| 26 | 10[2] | Mirror adjust switch.<br>Tachograph. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 27 | 5[1] | Auxiliary Heater. |
| 28 | 10[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 29 | - | Not used. |
| 30 | - | Not used. |
| 31 | - | Not used. |
| 32 | - | Fuel pump relay. |
| 33 | - | A/C clutch relay. |
| 34 | 15[1] | Stop lamp.<br>Center high mount. |
| 35 | 15[1] | Transmission control module. |
| 36 | - | Not used. |
| 37 | 10[1] | Heated exterior mirror. |
| 38 | - | Not used. |
| 39 | - | Four wheel drive power relay. |
| 40 | - | Stop lamp.<br>Center high mount.<br>Relay. |
| 41 | - | Horn relay. |
| 42 | - | Four wheel drive motor no. 2 relay. |
| 43 | - | Not used. |
| 44 | 5[1] | Not used.<br>Spare. |
| 45 | 5[1] | Not used.<br>Spare. |
| 46 | 10[2] | Not used.<br>Spare. |
| 47 | 10[2] | Brake pedal switch. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 48 | 20[1] | Horn. |
| 49 | - | Not used. |
| 50 | - | Not used. |
| 51 | - | Not used. |
| 52 | - | Not used. |
| 53 | 10[1] | Rear differential lock. |
| 54 | - | Not used. |
| 55 | - | Not used. |
| 86 | - | Four wheel drive motor no.1 relay. |

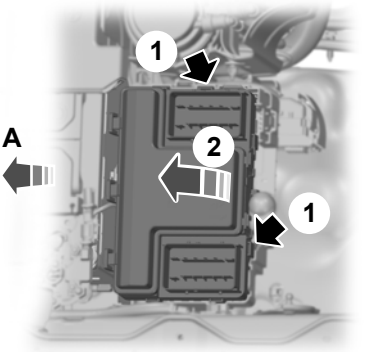
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

**Power Distribution Box - Bottom**

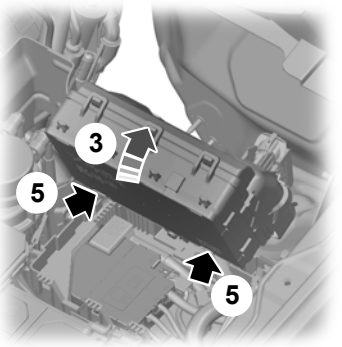
There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:




E206171

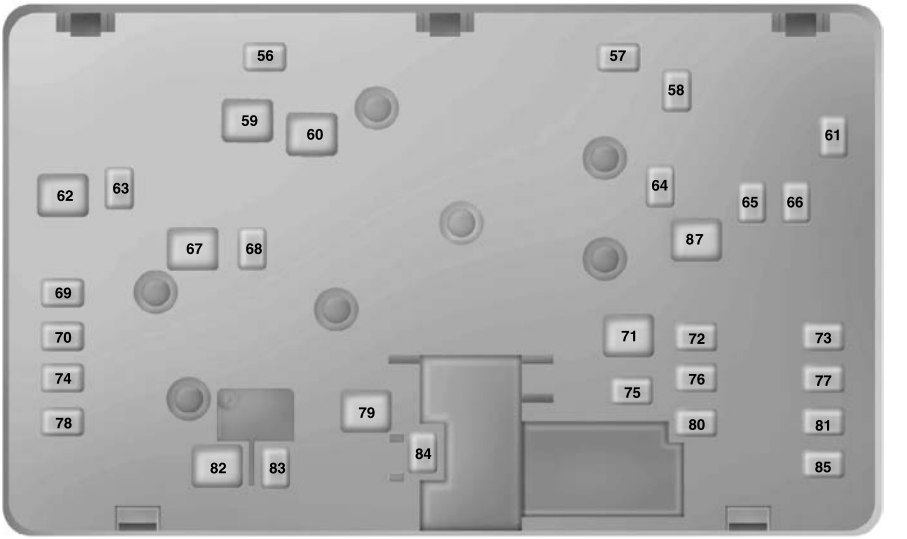
A Towards the front side of the vehicle.

1. Release the two latches located on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the rear side of the fuse box from the cradle.




E206174

3. Move the fuse box toward the rear side of the engine compartment and rotate as shown in the graphics.
4. Pivot the rear side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.
5. Release the two latches to open the fuse cover.




E190798

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 56 | - | Not used. |
| 57 | - | Not used. |
| 58 | - | Not used. |
| 59 | 25[4] | Four wheel drive. |
| 60 | 30[4] | Fuel pump control module. fuel |
| 61 | 30[3] | Windshield defrost (if fitted). |
| 62 | 50[4] | Body control module. |
| 63 | - | Not used. |
| 64 | 20[3] | Trailer tow connector. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 65 | 20[3] | Heated front seats. |
| 66 | 30[3] | Windshield defrost (right) (if fitted). |
| 67 | 50[4] | Body control module 2 (lighting). |
| 68 | 20[3] | Rear window defroster. |
| 69 | 30[3] | Anti-lock brake system. Valves. |
| 70 | - | Not used. |
| 71 | - | Not used. |
| 72 | - | Not used. |
| 73 | - | Not used. |
| 74 | 20[3] | Driver power seat. |
| 75 | - | Not used. |
| 76 | - | Not used. |
| 77 | - | Not used. |
| 78 | - | Not used. |
| 79 | 40[4] | Blower motor. |
| 80 | - | Not used. |
| 81 | 40[3] | Inverter. |
| 82 | 60[4] | Anti-lock brake system. Pump. |
| 83 | 25[3] | Windshield wiper motor. |
| 84 | 30[3] | Starter motor solenoid. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 85 | - | Not used. |
| 87 | 40[4] | Trailer module. |

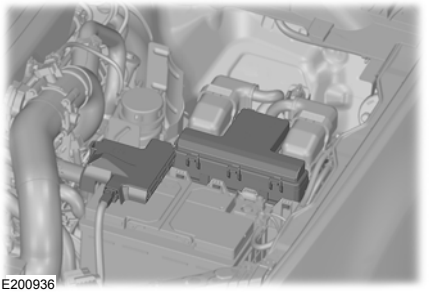
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

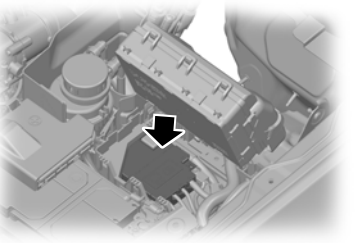
[4]LPJ-type fuse.

### Battery Mounted Fuse Link- Type 2 (2.2L and 3.2L Diesel)


E200936

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 225 | Alternator. |
| 2 | 125 | Electronic power assist steering. If equipped. |

### High Current Fuse Box - Type 2 (2.2L and 3.2L Diesel)

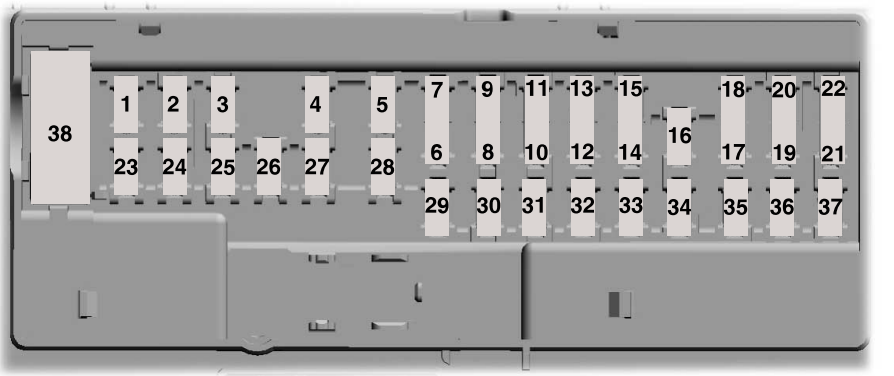


E206158

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 60 | Glow plug module. |
| 2 | 125 | Body control module. |
| 3 | 50 | Body control module.<br>Rear parking aid camera.<br>Voltage quality module.<br>Adaptive cruise control.<br>Head-up display. |
| 4 | - | Busbar through to power distribution box. |
| 5 | 100 | Auxiliary heater (if equipped). |

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse box is located below and outboard of the steering column behind the access cover.




E145984

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 10[1] | Automatic transmission gear shifter.<br>Map lamp.<br>Grab handle.<br>Battery saver.<br>Glove box lamp.<br>Sun visor. |
| 2 | 7.5[1] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 3 | 20[1] | Driver door latch / Fuel flap unlock relay. Door Double / Aux lock relay. |
| 4 | 5[1] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 5 | 20[1] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 6 | 10[2] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 7 | 10[2] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 8 | 10[2] | Security horn. |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 9 | 10[2] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 10 | 5[2] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 11 | 5[2] | Interior motion sensor. |
| 12 | 7.5[2] | Electronic control panel.<br>control<br>Climate control. |
| 13 | 7.5[2] | Instrument cluster.<br>Steering column control module.<br>Data link connector. |
| 14 | 10[2] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 15 | 10[2] | Gateway module/smart data link connector. OBD II (RHD). |
| 16 | 15[1] | Child lock. |
| 17 | 5[2] | Battery backed sounder. Tracking and Blocking Module. |
| 18 | 5[2] | Ignition switch. |
| 19 | 7.5[2]<br>- | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 20 | 7.5[2] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 21 | 5[2] | Humidity and in car temperature sensor. |
| 22 | 5[2] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 23 | 10[1] | Inverter. Door lock switch. Driver door window switch (one touch up/down all doors). |
| 24 | 20[1] | Central locking system. |
| 25 | 30[1] | Driver door control module (power window - one touch up/down all doors). |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| | | Driver door power window switch memory (with one touch up/down driver only). |
| 26 | 30[1] | Passenger door control module (power window) (one touch up/down). |
| 27 | 30[1] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 28 | 20[1] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 29 | 30[1] | Left rear door control module (power window) (one touch up/down). |
| 30 | 30[1] | Right rear door control module (power window) (one touch up/down). |
| 31 | 15[1] | Tachograph. |
| 32 | 10[1] | Radio transceiver module. SYNC. Global positioning system module. Multi function display. Door entry remote. |
| 33 | 20[1] | Audio unit. |
| 34 | 30[1] | Run start relay. |
| 35 | 5[1] | Restraints control module. |
| 36 | 15[1] | Auto-dimming interior mirror. |
| 37 | 15[1] | Not used.<br>(Spare). |
| 38 | 30[3] | Power windows.<br>(without door control module)<br>(one touch up/down - driver only). |

[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]PTC fuse

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART - SHORT WHEELBASE, CHASSIS CAB

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box - 2.2L Diesel

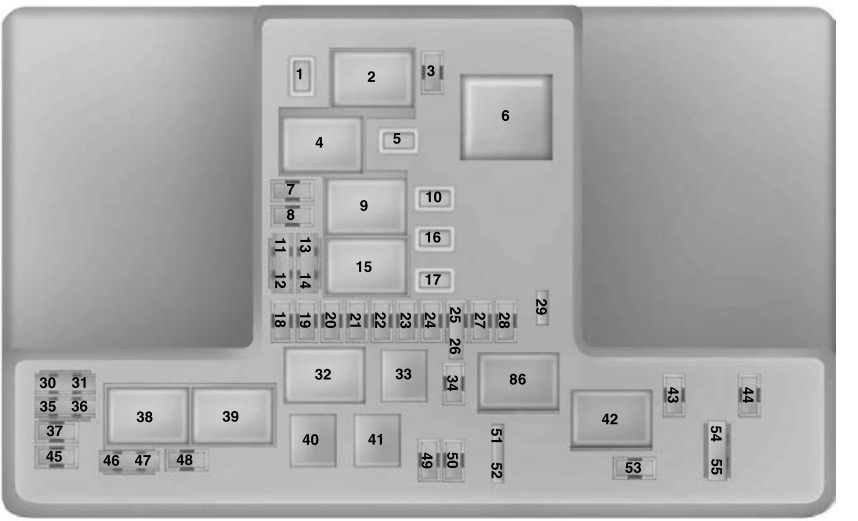
**WARNINGS**

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high-current fuses.

**WARNINGS**

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 255). Lift the release levers at the rear of the cover to remove it.




E190797

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 25[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 2 | - | Starter motor solenoid relay. |
| 3 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 4 | - | Front blower motor relay. |
| 5 | - | Not used. |
| 6 | - | Not used. |
| 7 | 20[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 8 | 20[1] | Power train control module - volumetric control valve, EGR cooler bypass, TMAF. |
| 9 | - | Powertrain control module relay. |
| 10 | 20[3] | Power point 1 / cigar lighter. |
| 11 | 15[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 12 | 15[2] | Powertrain control module - fan drive, glow plug control module. |
| 13 | 15[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 14 | 15[2] | Powertrain control module - PCV Heater. |
| 15 | - | Run/start relay. |
| 16 | 20[3] | Power point 2 / cigar lighter . |
| 17 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 18 | 10[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 19 | 10[1] | Electric power assisted steering. |
| 20 | 10[1] | Headlamp switch, headlamp levelling motor. |
| 21 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 22 | 10[1] | Air conditioning compressor. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 23 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 24 | 5[1] | AC pressure switch - if fitted |
| 25 | 10[2] | Anti-lock brake system. |
| 26 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 27 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 28 | 10[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 29 | 10[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 30 | - | Not used. |
| 31 | - | Not used. |
| 32 | - | Fuel pump relay. |
| 33 | - | Air conditioning clutch relay. |
| 34 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 35 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 36 | - | Not used. |
| 37 | 10[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 38 | - | Not used. |
| 39 | - | Not used. |
| 40 | - | Not used. |
| 41 | - | Horn relay. |
| 42 | - | Not used. |
| 43 | - | Not used. |
| 44 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 45 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 46 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 47 | 10[2] | Brake pedal switch. |
| 48 | 20[1] | Horn. |
| 49 | - | Not used. |
| 50 | - | Not used. |
| 51 | - | Not used. |
| 52 | - | Not used. |
| 53 | - | Not used. |
| 54 | - | Not used. |
| 55 | - | Not used. |
| 86 | - | Not used. |

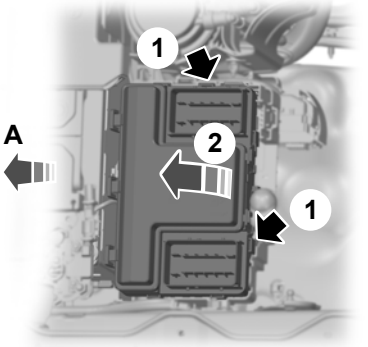
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

### Power Distribution Box - Bottom

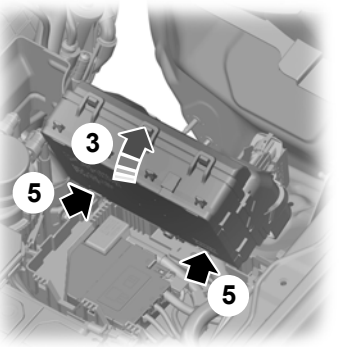
There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:




E206171

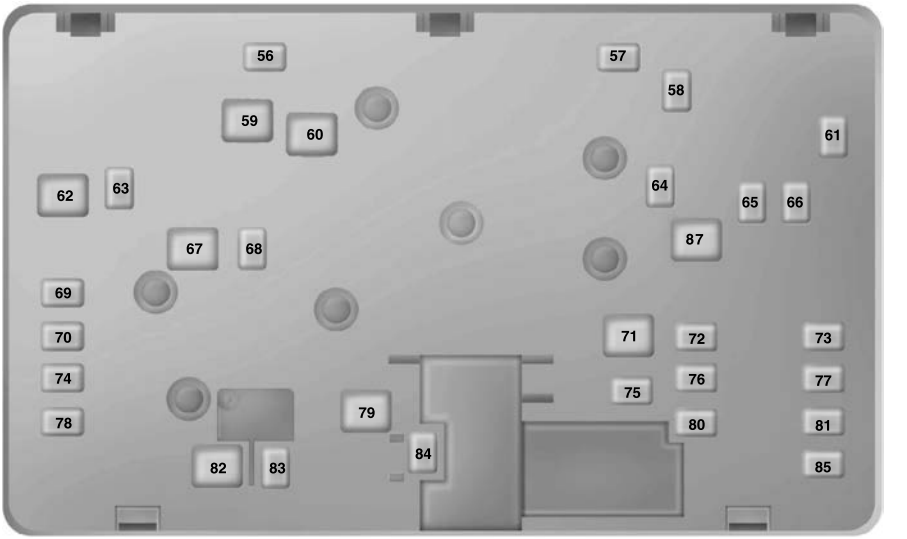
A Towards the front side of the vehicle.

1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the rear side of the fuse box from the cradle.




E206174

3. Move the fuse box toward the rear side of the engine compartment and rotate as shown in the graphics.
4. Pivot the rear side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.
5. Release the two latches to open the fuse cover.




E190798

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 56 | - | Not used. |
| 57 | - | Not used. |
| 58 | - | Not used. |
| 59 | - | Not used. |
| 60 | 30[4] | Fuel pump control module. |
| 61 | 30[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 62 | 50[4] | Body control module 1 (lighting). |
| 63 | - | Not used. |
| 64 | 20[3] | Trailer auxiliary. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 65 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 66 | 30[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 67 | 50[4] | Body control module 2 (lighting). |
| 68 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 69 | 30[3] | Antilock brake system valves. |
| 70 | - | Not used. |
| 71 | - | Not used. |
| 72 | - | Not used. |
| 73 | - | Not used. |
| 74 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 75 | - | Not used. |
| 76 | - | Not used. |
| 77 | - | Not used. |
| 78 | - | Not used. |
| 79 | 40[4] | Blower motor. |
| 80 | - | Not used. |
| 81 | 40[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 82 | 60[4] | Anti-lock brake system pump. |
| 83 | 25[3] | Windshield wiper motor. |
| 84 | 30[3] | Starter motor solenoid. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 85 | - | Not used. |
| 87 | 40[4] | Trailer module. |

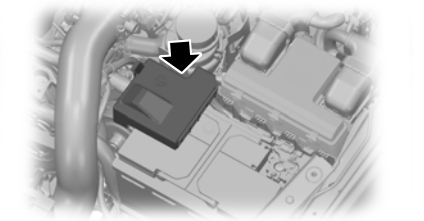
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

[4]LPJ-type fuse.

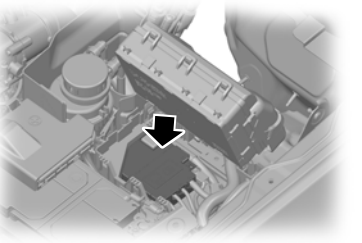
## Battery Mounted Fuse Link - 2.2L Diesel



E206156

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 225 | Alternator. |
| 2 | 125 | Electronic power assist steering. |

## High Current Fuse Box - 2.2L Diesel

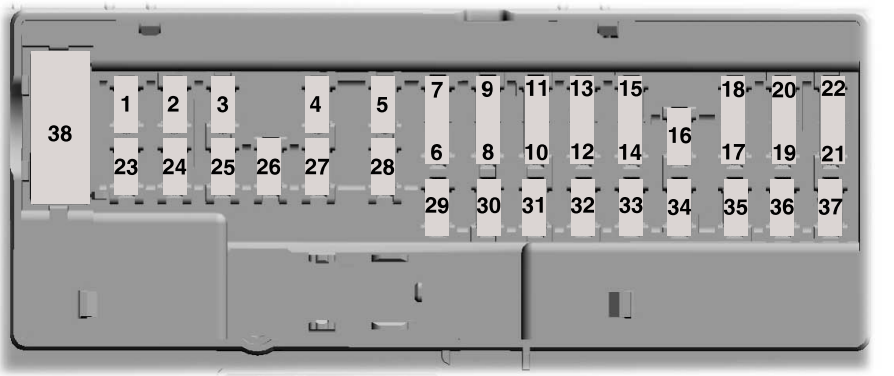


E206158

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 60 | Glow plug module. |
| 2 | 125 | Body control module. |
| 3 | 50 | Body control module. |
| 4 | - | Busbar through to power distribution box. |
| 5 | 100 | PTC heater (if fitted). |

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box - 2.2L Diesel

The fuse box is located below and outboard of the steering column behind the access cover.




E145984

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 10[1] | Demand lamp / battery saver - overhead console, automatic transmission gear shifter. glove box lamp, sun visor, grab handle, Map lamps. |
| 2 | 7.5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 3 | 20[1] | Driver door latch /fuel flap unlock relay. Door double/ aux lock relay. |
| 4 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 5 | 20[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 6 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 7 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 8 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 9 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 10 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 11 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 12 | 7.5[2] | Electronic control panel, climate control module. |
| 13 | 7.5[2] | Instrument cluster, steering column control module, smart data link connector. |
| 14 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 15 | 10[2] | Gateway module/smart data link connector, OBD II (RHD). |
| 16 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 17 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 18 | 5[2] | Ignition switch. |
| 19 | 7.5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 20 | 7.5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 21 | 5[2] | Humidity and in car temperature sensor. |
| 22 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 23 | 10[1] | Door lock switch. |
| 24 | 20[1] | Central locking system. |
| 25 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 26 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 27 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 28 | 20[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 29 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 30 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 31 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 32 | 10[1] | Radio transceiver module, SYNC, global positioning system module, multi function display, door entry remote. |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 33 | 20[1] | Audio unit. |
| 34 | 30[1] | Run/start relay. |
| 35 | 5[1] | Restraints control module. |
| 36 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 37 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 38 | 30[3] | Not used (spare). |

[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]PTC fuse

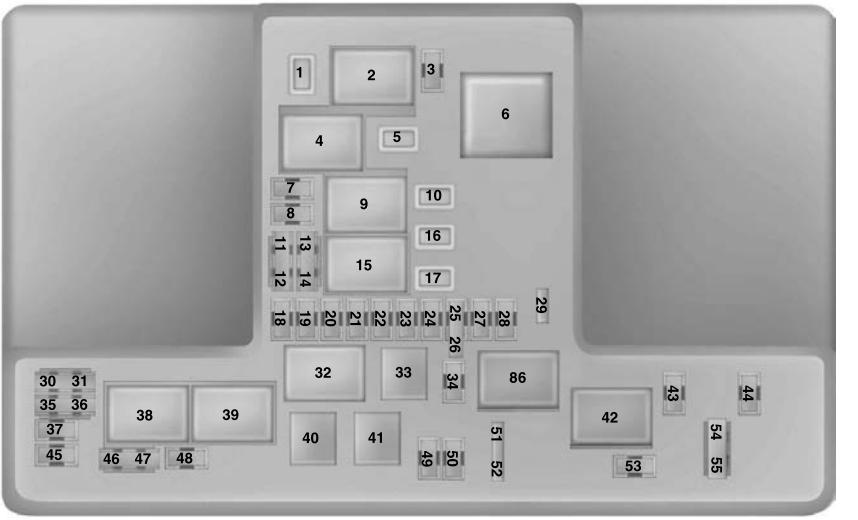
## Engine Compartment Fuse Box - 3.2L Diesel

**WARNINGS**

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high-current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 255). Lift the release levers at the rear of the cover to remove it.




E190797

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 25[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 2 | - | Starter motor solenoid relay. |
| 3 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 4 | - | Front blower motor relay. |
| 5 | 20[3] | Power point 3 (console rear). |
| 6 | - | Not used. |
| 7 | 20[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 8 | 20[1] | Power train control module - volumetric control valve, EGR cooler bypass, TMAF. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 9 | - | Powertrain control module relay. |
| 10 | 20[3] | Power point 1 / cigar lighter. |
| 11 | 15[2] | Not used. |
| 12 | 15[2] | Powertrain control module - fan drive, glow plug control module. |
| 13 | 15[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 14 | 15[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 15 | - | Run/start relay. |
| 16 | 20[3] | Power point 2 / cigar lighter . |
| 17 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 18 | 10[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 19 | 10[1] | Electric power assisted steering. |
| 20 | 10[1] | Headlamp switch, headlamp levelling motor. |
| 21 | 15[1] | Transfer case control module - terrain management switch. |
| 22 | 10[1] | Air conditioning compressor. |
| 23 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 24 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 25 | 10[2] | Anti-lock brake system. |
| 26 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 27 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 28 | 10[1] | Powertrain control module. |
| 29 | - | Not used. |
| 30 | - | Not used. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | Not used. |
| 32 | - | Not used. |
| 33 | - | Air conditioning clutch relay. |
| 34 | - | Not used. |
| 35 | 15[1] | Transmission control module. |
| 36 | - | Not used. |
| 37 | 10[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 38 | - | Not used. |
| 39 | - | Not used. |
| 40 | - | Fuel pump relay. |
| 41 | - | Horn relay. |
| 42 | - | Not used. |
| 43 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 44 | 25[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 45 | - | Not used. |
| 46 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 47 | 10[2] | Brake pedal switch. |
| 48 | 20[1] | Horn. |
| 49 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 50 | - | Not used. |
| 51 | - | Not used. |
| 52 | - | Not used. |
| 53 | - | Not used. |
| 54 | - | Not used. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 55 | - | Not used. |
| 86 | - | Not used. |

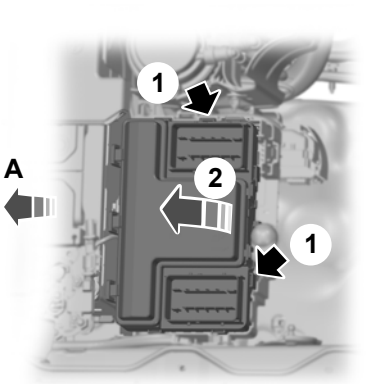
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

### Power Distribution Box - Bottom

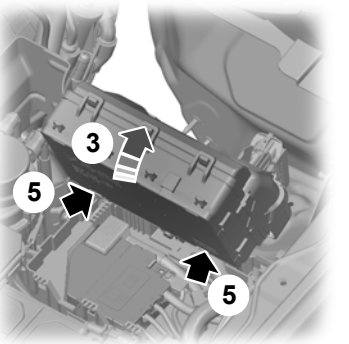
There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:




E206171

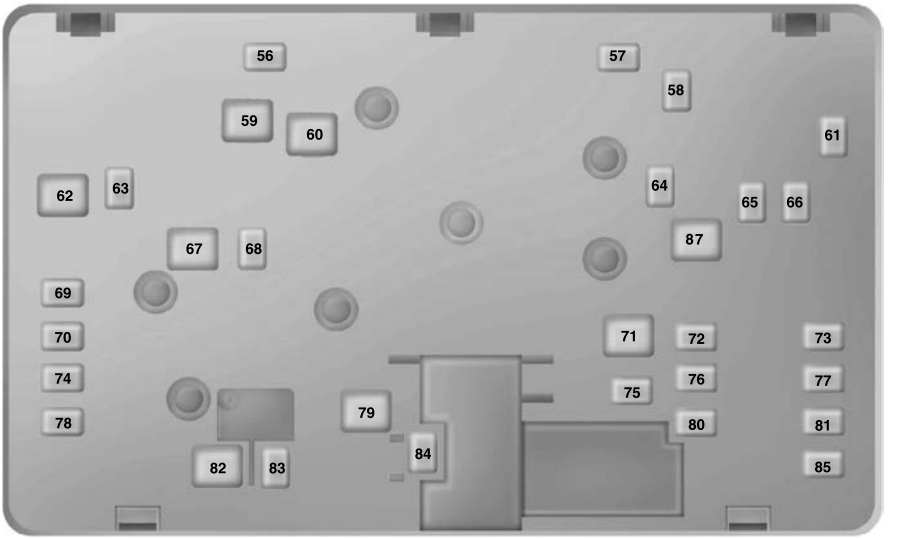
A Towards the front side of the vehicle.

1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the rear side of the fuse box from the cradle.




E206174

3. Move the fuse box toward the rear side of the engine compartment and rotate as shown in the graphics.
4. Pivot the rear side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.
5. Release the two latches to open the fuse cover.




E190798

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 56 | 30[3] | Fuel pump control module. |
| 57 | - | Not used. |
| 58 | - | Not used. |
| 59 | - | Not used. |
| 60 | - | Not used. |
| 61 | - | Not used. |
| 62 | 50[4] | Body control module 1 (lighting). |
| 63 | - | Not used. |
| 64 | 20[3] | Trailer auxilliary. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 65 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 66 | - | Not used. |
| 67 | 50[4] | Body control module 2 (lighting). |
| 68 | 40[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 69 | 30[3] | Antilock brake system valves. |
| 70 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 71 | - | Not used. |
| 72 | - | Not used. |
| 73 | - | Not used. |
| 74 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 75 | 25[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 76 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 77 | 25[3] | AWD module. |
| 78 | 25[3] | AWD module. |
| 79 | 40[4] | Blower motor. |
| 80 | 20[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 81 | 40[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 82 | 60[4] | Anti-lock brake system pump. |
| 83 | 25[3] | Windshield wiper motor. |
| 84 | 30[3] | Starter motor solenoid. |

| Fuse/Relay Number | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 85 | 30[3] | Not used (spare). |
| 87 | 40[4] | Trailer module. |

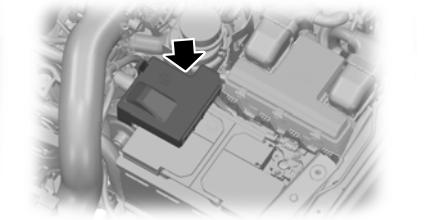
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

[4]LPJ-type fuse.

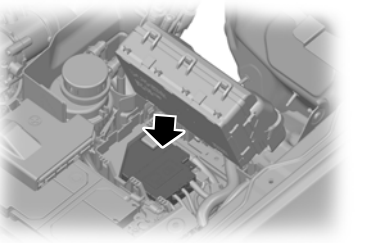
## Battery Mounted Fuse Link- 3.2L Diesel



E206156

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 225 | Alternator. |
| 2 | 125 | Electronic power assist steering. |

## High Current Fuse Box - 3.2L Diesel



E206158

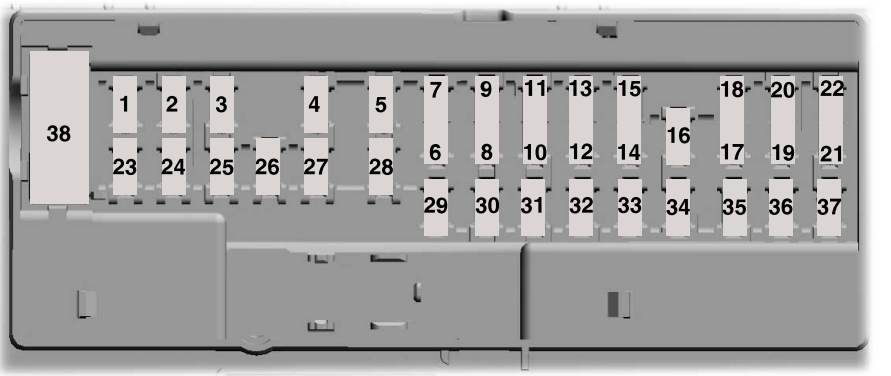
| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 60 | Glow plug module. |
| 2 | 125 | Body control module. |
| 3 | 50 | Body control module. |
| 4 | - | Busbar through to power distribution box. |
| 5 | 100 | PTC Heater (if fitted). |

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box- 3.2L Diesel

The fuse box is located below and outboard of the steering column behind the access cover.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015




E145984

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 10[1] | Demand lamp / battery saver - overhead console, automatic transmission gear shifter. glove box lamp, sun visor, grab handle, Map lamps. |
| 2 | 7.5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 3 | 20[1] | Driver door latch . Door double/aux lock relay. |
| 4 | 5[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 5 | 20[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 6 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 7 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 8 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 9 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 10 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 11 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 12 | 7.5[2] | Electronic control panel, climate control module. |
| 13 | 7.5[2] | Instrument cluster, steering column control module, smart data link connector. |
| 14 | 10[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 15 | 10[2] | Gateway module/smart data link connector - OBD II (RHD). |
| 16 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 17 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 18 | 5[2] | Ignition switch. |
| 19 | 7.5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 20 | 7.5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 21 | 5[2] | Humidity and in car temperature sensor. |
| 22 | 5[2] | Not used (spare). |
| 23 | 10[1] | Door lock switch. |
| 24 | 20[1] | Central locking system. |
| 25 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 26 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 27 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 28 | 20[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 29 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 30 | 30[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 31 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 32 | 10[1] | Radio transceiver module, SYNC, global positioning system module, multi function display, door entry remote. |

| Fuse | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Components |
|---|---|---|
| 33 | 20[1] | Audio unit. |
| 34 | 30[1] | Run/start relay. |
| 35 | 5[1] | Restraints control module. |
| 36 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 37 | 15[1] | Not used (spare). |
| 38 | 30[3] | Not used (spare). |

[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]PTC fuse

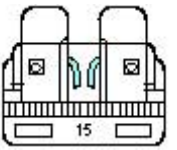
## CHANGING A FUSE

**WARNINGS**

Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by an authorized dealer.

Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before attempting to change a fuse.

Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.




E142430

If electrical components in your vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. A break in the fuse wire will indicate a blown fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford Authorized Repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following additional checks.

**WARNINGS**

Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

**CAUTION**

When carrying out maintenance checks, make sure that filler caps are fitted securely.

### Daily checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

### Check when refueling

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 251).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 253).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 254).
- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).
- Tire condition. See **Tire Care** (page 267).

### Monthly checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 252).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Power steering fluid level. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 253).
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

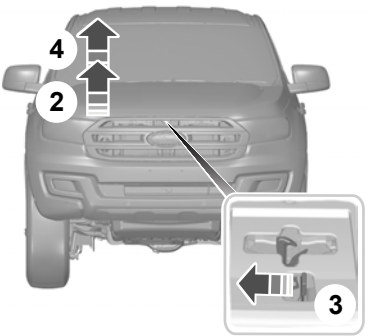
## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



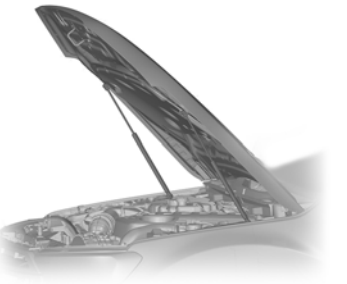

E206129

1. Pull the hood release lever. See **At a Glance** (page 11).




E207690

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Move the catch to the left for vehicles with left hand drive. Move the catch to the right for vehicle with right hand drive.
4. Open the hood.



E201861

5. The hood strut automatically supports the hood.

### Closing the Hood

1. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm.
2. If necessary, apply a downward force on the leading edge of the hood prior to engage with the latch, to latch the hood fully.

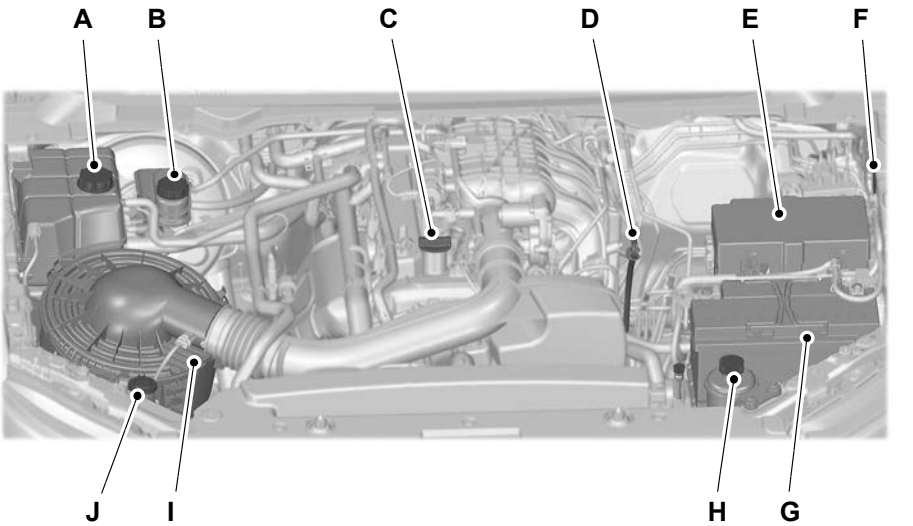
**Note:** *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

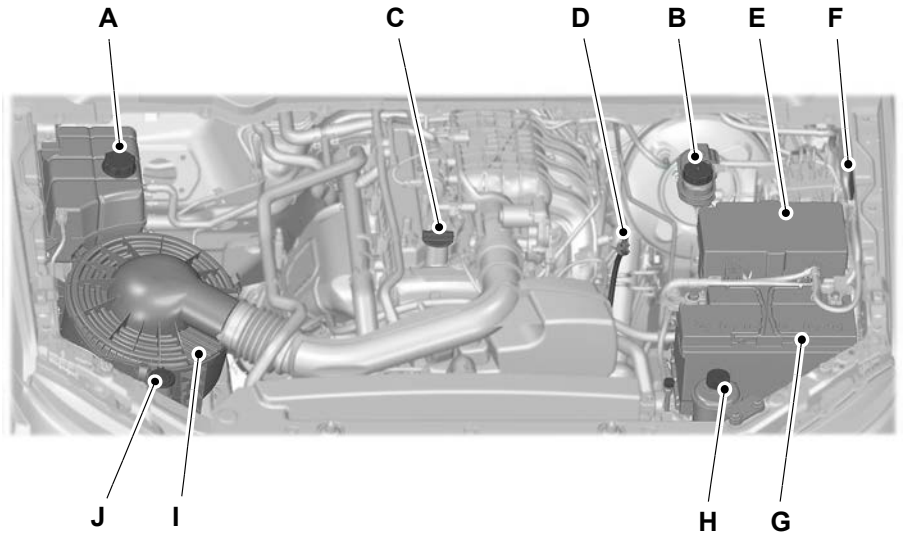
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L DURATEC-HE (122KW/165PS) - MI4

**RHD**




E131919

**LHD**




A Engine coolant reservoir cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 252).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 253).

C Engine oil filler cap[1]. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 251).

D Engine oil dipstick[1]. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 251).

E Engine junction box. See **Fuses** (page 189).

F Vehicle identificaton plate. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 285).

G Battery. See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 185).

H Power steering fluid reservoir cap. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 253).

I Air cleaner.

J Washer fluid reservoir cap. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 254).

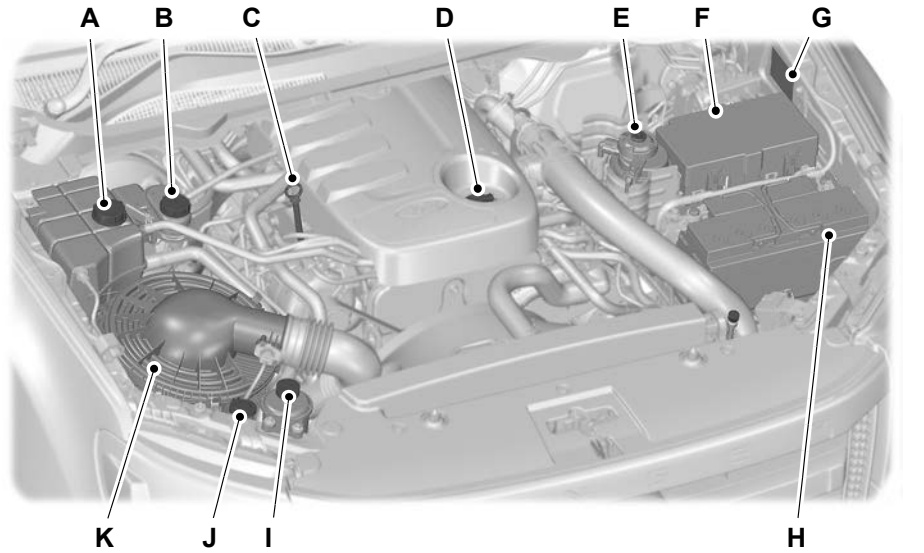
[1] The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

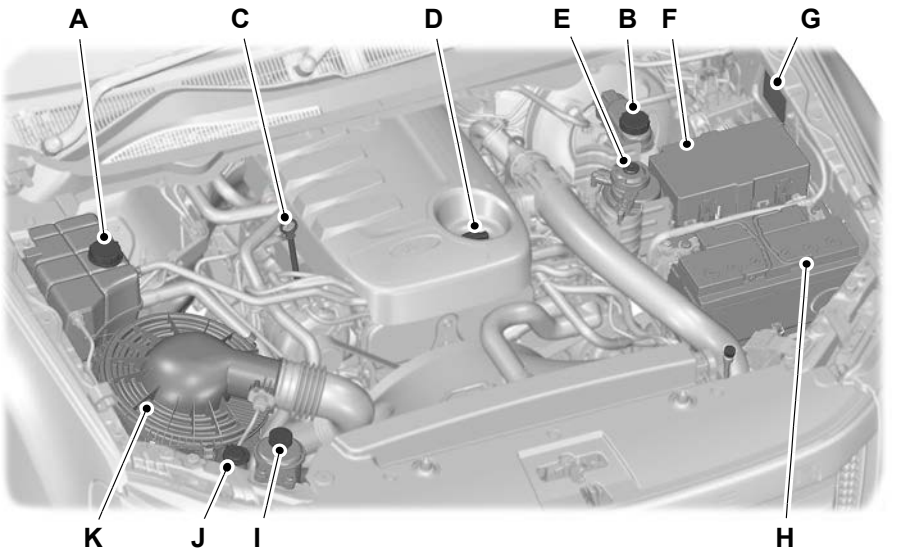
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (PUMA) DIESEL

**RHD**




E131930

**LHD**



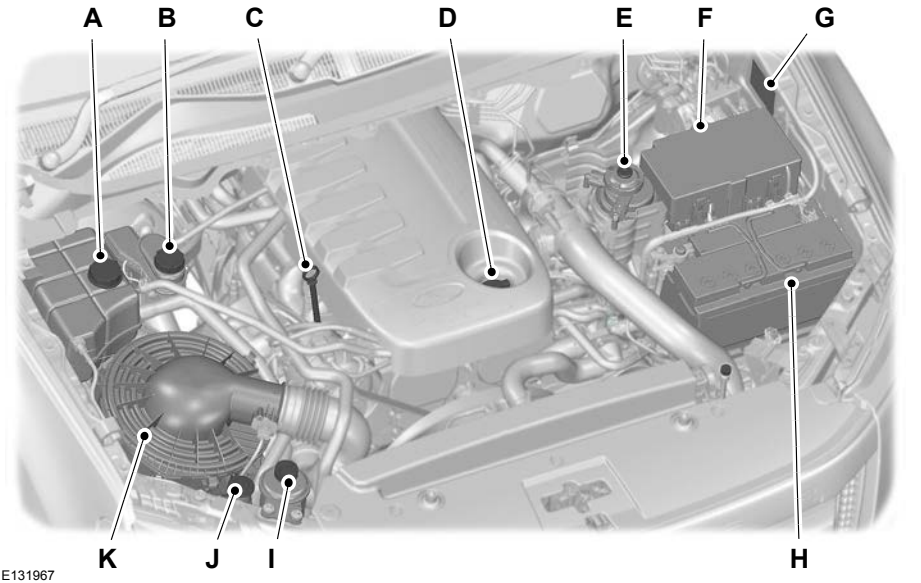

E131931

A Engine coolant reservoir cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 252).
B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap.
C Engine oil dipstick[1]. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 251).
D Engine oil filler cap[1]. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 251).
E Fuel filter water trap. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 254).
F Engine junction box. See **Fuses** (page 189).
G Vehicle identificaton plate. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 285).
H Battery. See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 185).
I Power steering fluid reservoir cap. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 253).
J Washer fluid reservoir cap. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 254).
K Air cleaner.

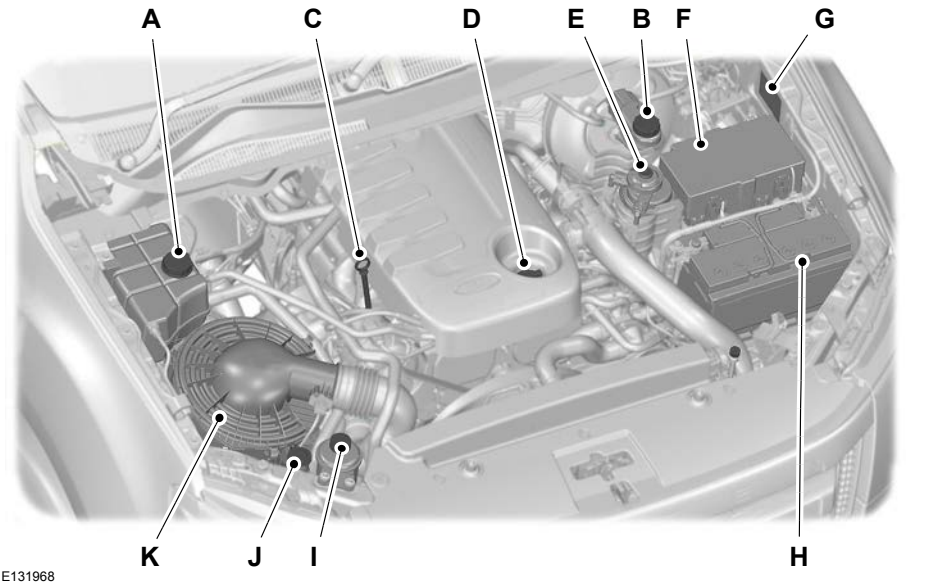
[1] The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (PUMA) DIESEL

**RHD**



**LHD**




A Engine coolant reservoir cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 252).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 253).

C Engine oil dipstick[1]. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 251).

D Engine oil filler cap[1]. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 251).

E Fuel filter water trap. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 254).

F Engine junction box. See **Fuses** (page 189).

G Vehicle identificaton plate. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 285).

H Battery. See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 185).

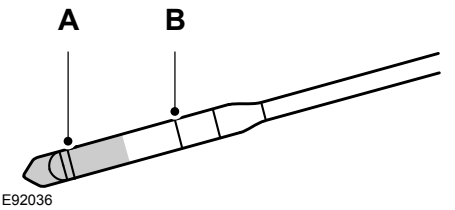
I Power steering fluid reservoir cap. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 253).

J Washer fluid reservoir cap. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 254).

K Air cleaner.

[1] The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.5L DURATEC-HE (122KW/165PS) - MI4

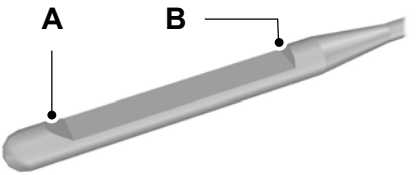



E92036

A MIN

B MAX

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (PUMA) DIESEL/3.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (PUMA) DIESEL




E71362

A MIN

B MAX

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Switch off the engine and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 303).

**Note:** *Check the oil level before starting the engine.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

**Note:** *Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they may damage the engine.*

**Note:** *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.*

### Adding Oil

**WARNINGS**

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 303).
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

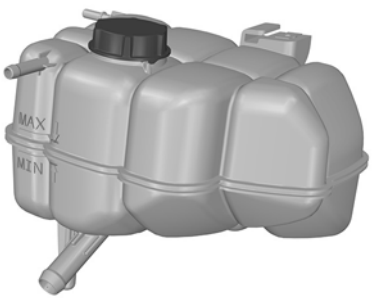
**Note:** *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

**WARNINGS**

Do not dispose of engine coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.




E206128

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add coolant immediately.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29ºC and -34ºC.

**Note:** *Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.*

**Note:** *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may expand beyond the **MAX** mark.*

**Note:** *Do not use Stop Leak Pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.*

### Adding Engine Coolant

**WARNINGS**

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not allow the coolant to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

**Note:** *Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *Use coolants which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other coolants may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's Warranty. See* ***Capacities and Specifications*** *(page 285).*

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap **SLOWLY**. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Refit filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong click.

**Note:** *In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.*

**Note:** *Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.*

**Note:** *The cooling system filler cap should be inspected and cleaned regularly. The cap should be replaced if there is any evidence of deterioration of the sealing.*

## BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

**WARNINGS**

Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford's performance standards.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

**Note:** *Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

**Note:** *The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 303).

## POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK - VEHICLES WITH: HYDRAULIC POWER ASSIST STEERING (HPAS)

**WARNING**

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

**Note:** *Make sure that the fluid level is between the* ***MIN*** *and the* ***MAX*** *marks.*

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 303).

### Adding Power Steering Fluid

**Note:** *Do not add fluid further than the MAX mark.*

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 303).
3. Replace the filler cap.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

Top up the washer fluid reservoir when the washer fluid level indicator is on. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 62).

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability.

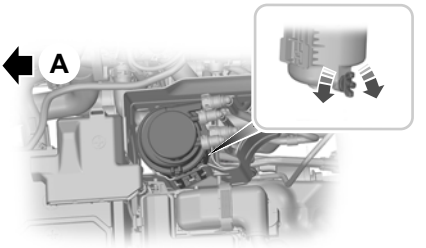
## DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP

**WARNING**

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

**Note:** *Only add fuel that meets the Ford specification. See **Fuel Quality** (page 119).*

**Note:** *The in-tank pump will turn off automatically after approximately 40 seconds.*




E208053

A Front of Vehicle.

For item location: See **Under Hood Overview** (page 249).

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attach a tube to the drain plug and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.
3. Loosen the drain plug approximately 1.5 turns.
4. Switch the ignition on to activate the in-tank pump.
5. Allow the water to drain.
6. Switch the ignition off.
7. Tighten the drain plug until you feel a strong resistance.
8. Remove the tube from the drain plug.
9. Start the engine.
10. Check for leaks.

**Note:** *The water-in-fuel indicator lamp will go out after approximately 2 seconds, with the engine running.*

## CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

### Battery Management System

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life. If excessive battery drain is detected, the system may temporarily disable certain electrical features to protect the battery. Those electrical accessories affected include the rear defrost, heated/cooled seats, climate control fan, heated steering wheel, audio and navigation system. A message may be shown in the information displays to alert the driver that battery protection actions are active. These messages are only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Electrical accessory installation

To ensure proper operation of the Battery Management System, any electrical devices that are added to your vehicle should not have their ground connection made directly at the negative battery post.

A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

When a battery replacement is required, you must use a recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with the external charger, the Battery Management System requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time (key off with doors closed) to relearn the new battery state of charge. Prior to relearning the state of charge, the Battery Management System may disable electrical features (to protect the battery) earlier than normal.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

**WARNING**

For vehicles with start-stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

### Main Battery

**Note:** *Where applicable you must reprogram the audio system using the keycode.*

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 243).

### Auxiliary Battery

**WARNING**

Never jump start the vehicle at the auxiliary battery.

The auxiliary battery is located in the loadspace. The auxiliary battery powers the auxiliary loads connected to the vehicle regardless of the engine status. The vehicle charging system charges it when the engine is running. When the engine is not running, it is isolated from the vehicle power supply to prevent drain from the main battery.

**Note:** *The auxiliary battery does not provide cranking power to the engine.*

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E222238

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl alcohol or windscreen washer concentrate.



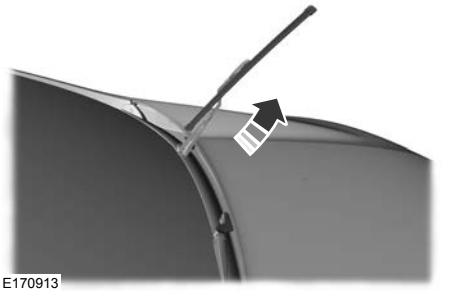
Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

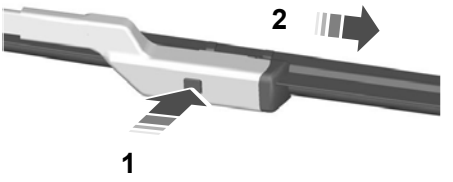
### Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

**Note:** *The windshield wiper blades are different in length.*

**Note:** *If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the wiper blades can clash damaging the wiper system.*


E170913

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E72899

2. Press and hold the locking button.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

Contact an authorized dealer.

## CHANGING A BULB

### Lamp Assembly Condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure.

Condensation can be a natural occurrence of this design.

When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur in cold temperatures.

When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens.

The mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

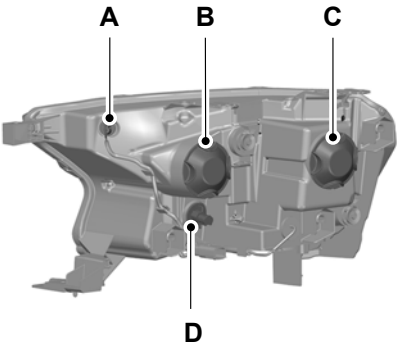
Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

### Replacing the Headlamp Bulbs

**Note:** *Do not touch the bulb glass.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

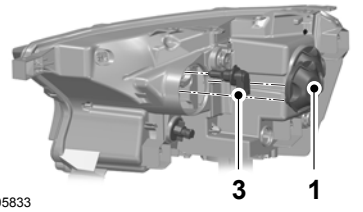



E205822

Headlamp assembly:

A. Front parking lamp bulb.
B. High beam headlamp bulb/ Daytime running lamp bulb.
C. Low beam headlamp bulb.
D. Direction indicator lamp bulb.

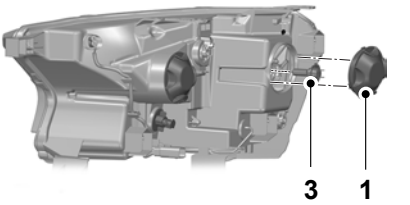
### Replacing the High Beam Headlamp Bulb




E205833

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

### Replacing the Low Beam Headlamp Bulb




E205825

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pull it straight out.[1]
4. Release the retainer spring and remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by pulling it straight out.[2]

[1]- Projector type headlamp assembly.

[2]- Reflector type headlamp assembly.

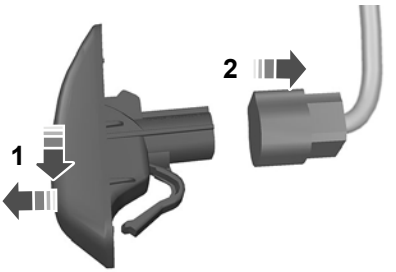
### Replacing the Front Parking Bulb

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

### Replacing the Direction Indicator Lamp Bulb

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

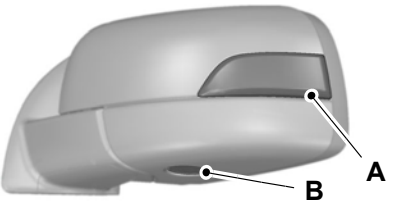
### Side Repeater




E133682

1. Slide the lens to the rear and remove it.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.

### Approach Lamp and Side Direction Indicator



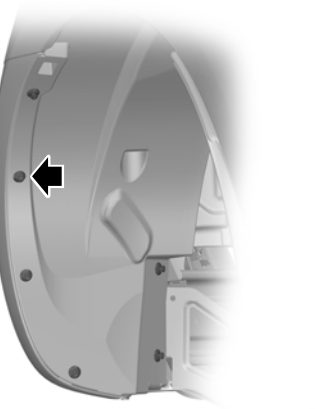

E133683

A Side direction indicator.

B Approach lamp.

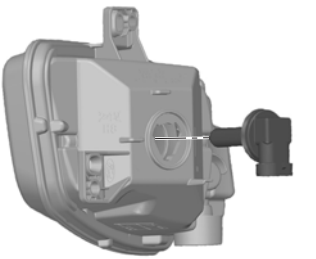
**Note:** *These lamps are not serviceable, see an authorized dealer if it they fail.*

### Front Fog Lamps



E205847

1. Remove the screws.
2. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E205849

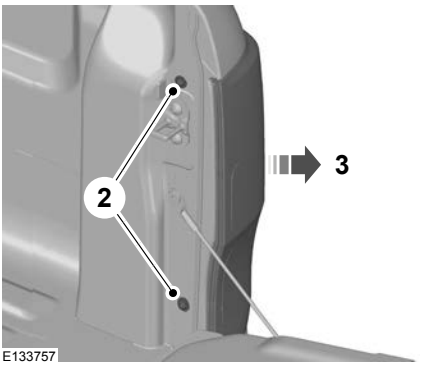
4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

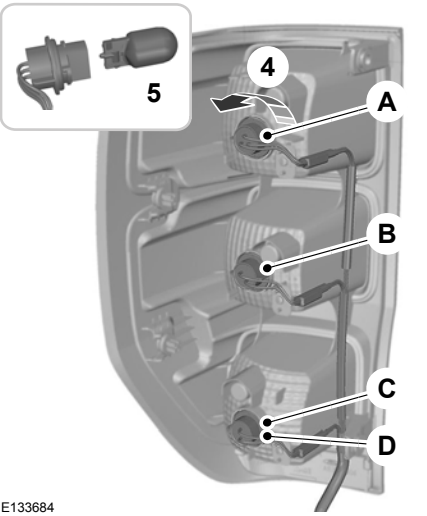
**Note:** *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

## Rear Lamps

### Type 1

### Tail, Brake, Reversing, Fog Lamp and Direction Indicator




A Stop and rear lamp.

B Rear direction indicator.

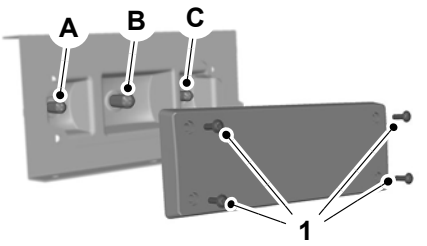
C Reversing lamp.

D Rear fog lamp.

1. Pull up on the manual tailgate handle to release the tailgate.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
5. Remove the bulb.

**Type 2**

**Tail, Brake, Reversing Lamp and Direction Indicator**



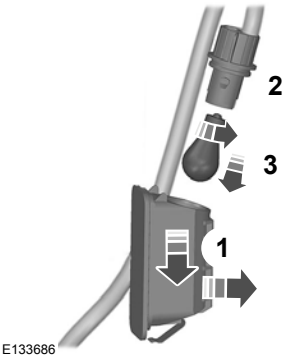

E133685

A Rear direction indicator.
B Stop and rear lamp.
C Reversing lamp.

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

## License Plate Lamp

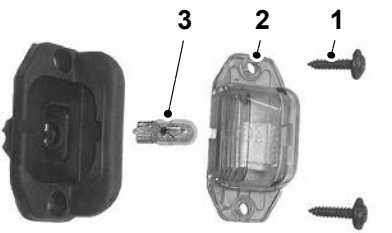
**Type 1**




E133686

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Rotate the housing counterclockwise to the unlock position.
3. Remove the bulb.

**Type 2**

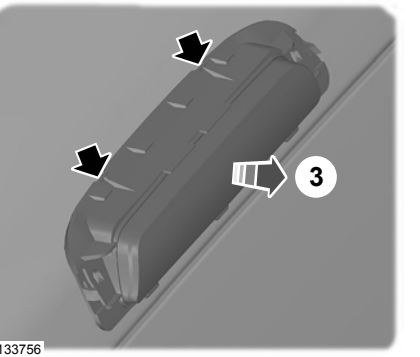



E133687

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

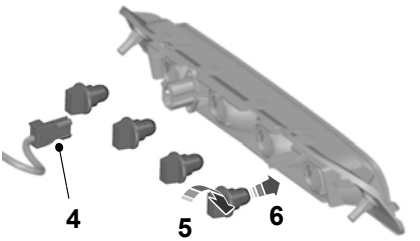
## Central High Mounted Brake Lamp

**Type 1**




E133756

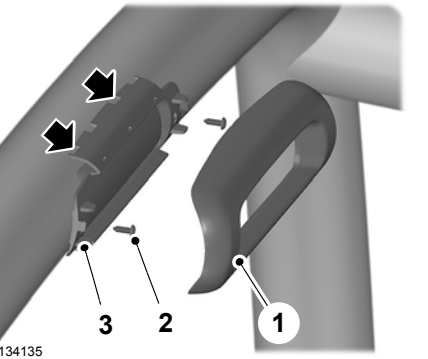
1. Remove the lamp lens.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Carefully prise out the lamp.




E133755

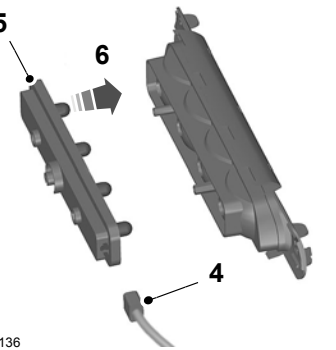
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder 45º counterclockwise and remove it.
6. Remove the bulb.

**Type 2**




E134135

1. Remove the lamp lens.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Carefully prise out the lamp.




E134136

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
6. Remove the bulb.

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

| Bulb | Specification | Power ( Watts) |
|---|---|---|
| Headlamp low beam.[+]<br>Headlamp low beam.[++] | H7<br>H11 | 55<br>55 |
| Headlamp high beam.[*]<br>Headlamp high beam.[**] | H15<br>HB3 | 55<br>60 |
| Daytime running lamps. | H15 | 15 |
| Front position lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Front fog lamp. | H8 | 35 |
| Front direction indicator. | P21W | 21 |
| Side direction indicator. | [1] | - |
| Rear direction indicator. | WY21W | 21 |
| Rear position lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Rear position/Stop lamp. | W21/5W | 21/5 |
| Central high mounted brake lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Reversing lamp. | W21W | 21 |
| Rear fog lamp. | W21W | 21 |
| License plate lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Roof bar lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Interior lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Reading lamp. | W5W | 5 |

[+] Reflector type.

[++] Projector type.

[*] With Daytime running lamps.

[**] Without Daytime running lamps.

[1] Bulb replacement is not possible as the bulb is an integral part of the unit. The side direction indicator lamp unit has to be replaced



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART - SHORT WHEELBASE, CHASSIS CAB

| Bulb | Specification | Power ( Watts) |
|---|---|---|
| Headlamp low beam.*<br>Headlamp low beam.** | H7<br>H11 | 55<br>55 |
| Headlamp high beam.*<br>Headlamp high beam.** | H15<br>HB3 | 55<br>60 |
| Daytime running lamps. | H15 | 15 |
| Front position lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Front fog lamp. | H8 | 35 |
| Front direction indicator. | P21W | 21 |
| Side direction indicator. | [1] | - |
| Rear direction indicator. | PY21W | 21 |
| Rear position lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Rear position/Stop lamp | P21/5W | 5 |
| Central high mounted brake lamp. | LED | - |
| Reversing lamp. | W16W | 16 |
| Rear fog lamp. | P21W | 21 |
| License plate lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Stop/Tail Lamp | P21/5W | 21/5 |

| Bulb | Specification | Power ( Watts) |
|---|---|---|
| Rear Direction Indicator | P21W | 21 |
| Reverse Lamp | P21W | 21 |

[+] Reflector type.

[++] Projector type.

[*] With Daytime running lamps.

[**] Without Daytime running lamps.

[1] Bulb replacement is not possible as the bulb is an integral part of the unit. The side direction indicator lamp unit has to be replaced

- [*]



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

**WARNING**

If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield.

**Note:** *Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.*

**Note:** *Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.*

**Note:** *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

### Cleaning the headlamps

**CAUTIONS**

Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

### Cleaning the rear window

**CAUTION**

Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

### Cleaning the chrome trim

**CAUTION**

Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

### Cleaning the alloy wheels

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

**Note:** *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

**Note:** *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

**Note:** *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

### Body paintwork preservation

**CAUTIONS**

Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.

Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.

Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### Safety belts

**WARNINGS**

Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Do not allow moisture to penetrate the safety belt retractor mechanism.

Clean the safety belts with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let the safety belts dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

### Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens

**WARNING**

Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

### Rear windows

**CAUTIONS**

Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

**CAUTION**

Remove apparently harmless looking substances from the paintwork immediately (e.g. bird droppings, tree resins, insect remains, tar spots, road salt and industrial fall out).

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products is available from your Ford Dealer. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening or on the B pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

**Note:** *Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.*

**Note:** *Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.*

**Note:** *If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.*

## TIRE CARE

### Tire Care

#### Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check the pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by the Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

**WARNING**

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Tire Label located on door opening or on the B-pillar. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of the vehicle. If you do not maintain the inflation pressure at the levels specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as shimmy. Shimmy is a severe vibration and oscillation in the steering wheel after the vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road that does not dampen out by itself. Shimmy may result from significant under-inflation of the tires, improper tires (load range, size, or type), or vehicle modifications such as lift-kits. In the event that your vehicle experiences shimmy, you should slowly reduce speed by either lifting off the accelerator pedal or lightly applying the brakes. The shimmy will cease as the vehicle speed decreases.*

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found next to the driver's seat on the Tire Label located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 6ºC temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 7 kPa in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

**Note:** *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1.6 km, never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

**Note:** *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.



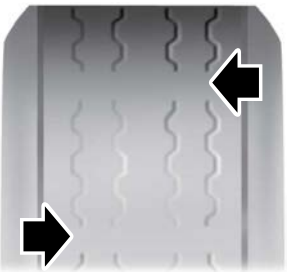
Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire Wear



E142546

Tire wear indicators are moulded in to the bottom of the tread grooves to aid in determining when to replace the tire. Tires should be replaced before the tread wears down to the same height as the wear indicators.

### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

### Age

**WARNING**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

### Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

**WARNINGS**

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on the Tire Label. Refer to See **Technical Specifications** (page 284). If this



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**WARNINGS**

information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

The two front tires or two rear tires should generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, the system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

### Safety Practices

**WARNINGS**

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 56 km/h. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

**Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.**

*Observe posted speed limits

*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns

*Avoid potholes and objects on the road

*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

### Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

### Tire Rotation

**WARNING**

If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, then the settings for the system sensors need to be updated. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure in this chapter.

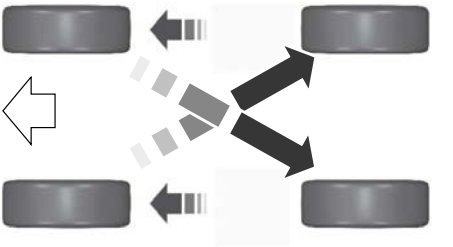
**Note:** *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval of between 5,000 km to 10,000 km will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Rear-wheel drive vehicles and four-wheel drive vehicles (front tires at left of diagram)



E142548

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**WARNING**

Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING WINTER TIRES

If winter tires are used you must inflate them to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressure table. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).

## USING SNOW CHAINS

**WARNINGS**

Do not exceed 50 km/h.

Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).

If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains of 10 mm or smaller.

Only use snow chains on the rear axle.

**Note:** *The anti-lock brake system will continue to operate normally.*

### Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

**WARNING**

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 267). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

## How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature is significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 17ºC or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System


E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

## Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The system measures the pressure in the road tires and displays a warning lamp in the instrument cluster when a low pressure is detected. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 62).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

**When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed**

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

**When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly**

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

**When Inflating the Tires**

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**System Warning Lamps**

| Warning lamp | Description | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Solid warning lamp | Tire(s) under-inflated | 1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 267). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).<br>2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** in this chapter. |
| | Spare tire in use | Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system. |
| | Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction | If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service. |
| Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp | Spare tire in use | Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system. |
| | Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction | If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service. |

**If the Warning Lamp is On:**

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

### Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

**Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure**

1. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
2. See **Information Displays** (page 68).

**To reset the tire pressure monitoring system, scroll to:**

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the **OK** button. |
| Driver assist | Press the **OK** button. |
| Tire Monitor | Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears. |

**Type Approvals**

Refer to See **Type Approvals** (page 432). for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor Radio Frequency Compliance details.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Lug Nuts

You can obtain replacement locking lug nuts or a locking lug nut key using the reference number certificate.

### Vehicles with a Spare Wheel

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

**WARNING**

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).

**Note:** *Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.*

### Vehicle Jack

**WARNINGS**

Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**WARNINGS**

Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

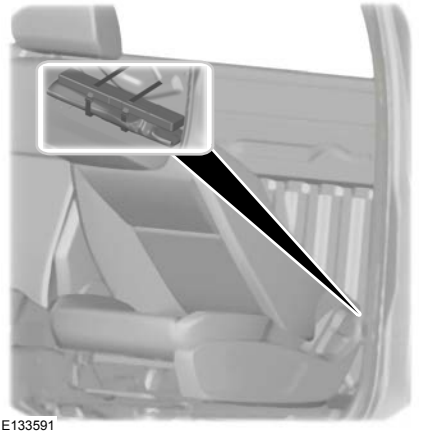
Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

Use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tires.

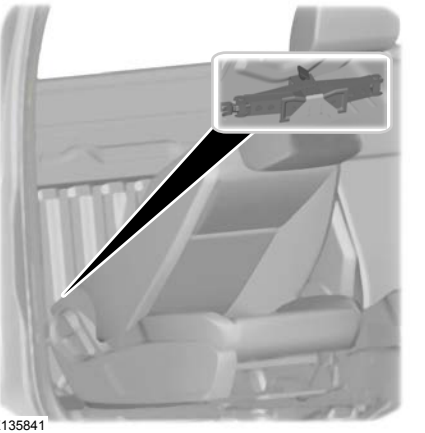
**Note:** *Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 2,000 kg and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 mm.*

The jack, wheel brace, and jack handle are located in the cab.

### Single Cab / Chassis Cab

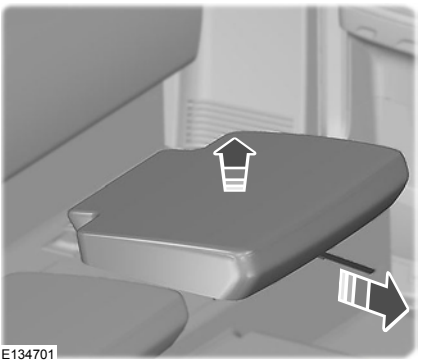

E133591

1. Fold the left-hand side seatback forward.
2. Remove the locking strap and remove the tools.

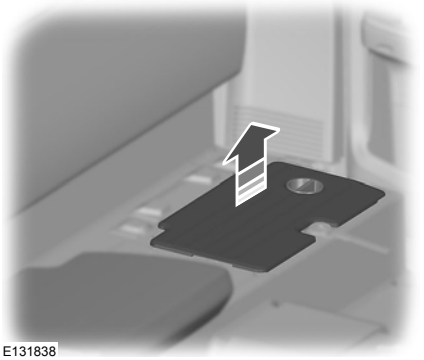

E135841

1. Fold the right-hand side seatback forward.
2. Loosen the jack, remove the bolt and remove the jack.

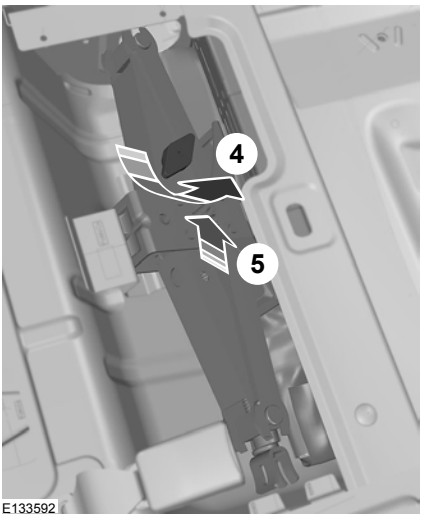
### Stretch Cab


E134701

1. Pull the release strap.
2. Remove the rear seats.


E131838

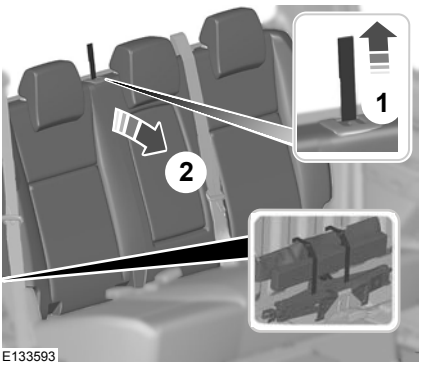
3. Remove the cover.



E133592

4. Remove the bolt.
5. Remove the jack.
6. Remove the tools.

**Double Cab**

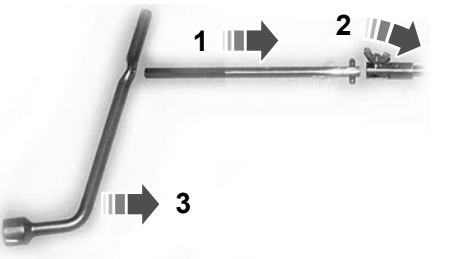


E133593

1. Lift the release strap.
2. Lower the seatback.
3. Remove the locking strap.
4. Remove the bolt.
5. Remove the jack.

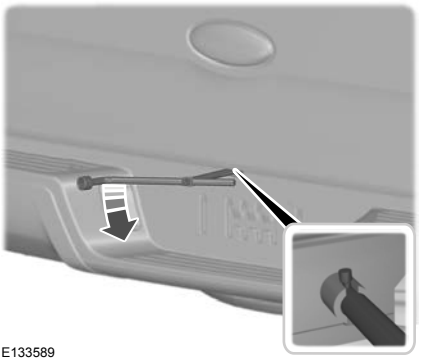
## Spare Wheel

**Note:** *The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle.*



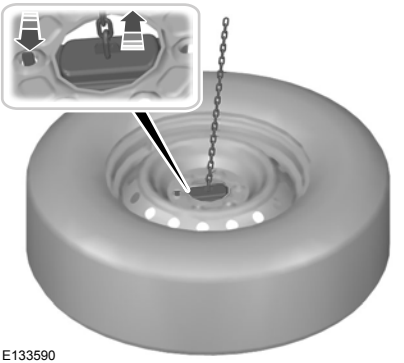
E79153

1. Assemble the handle.



E133589

2. Fully insert the jack handle into the guide hole. Turn counter-clockwise until the wheel rests on the ground and there is slack in the cable.

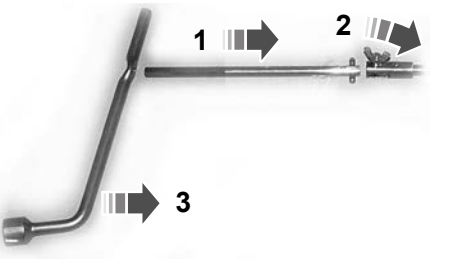


E133590

3. Pass the bracket and cable through the wheel opening.

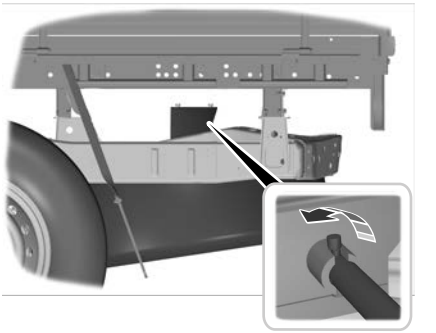
## Spare Wheel - Chassis Cab

**Note:** *The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle.*



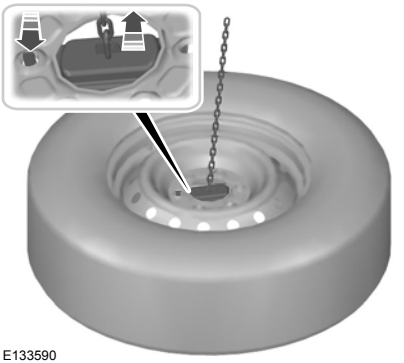

E79153

1. Assemble the handle.



E221938

2. Insert the handle into the winch. Turn counter-clockwise until the wheel rests on the ground and there is slack in the cable.



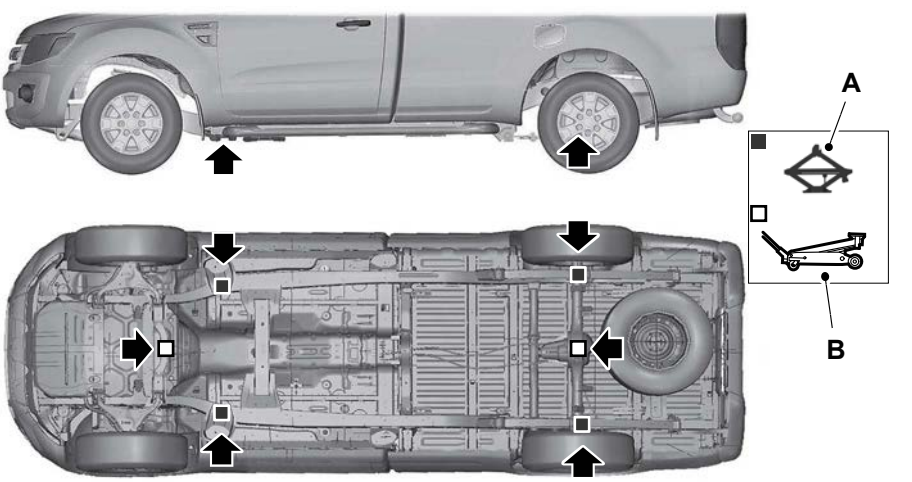
E133590

3. Pass the bracket and cable through the wheel opening.

## Jacking and Lifting Points

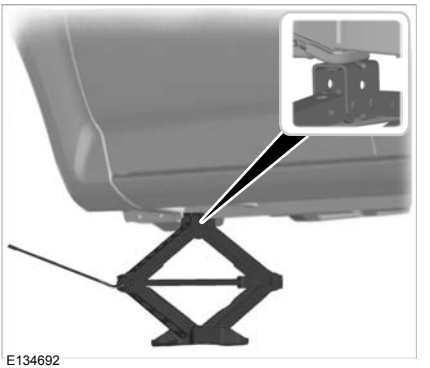
**WARNING**

You must use the specified jacking points.




E133594

A Emergency use only.
B Maintenance.

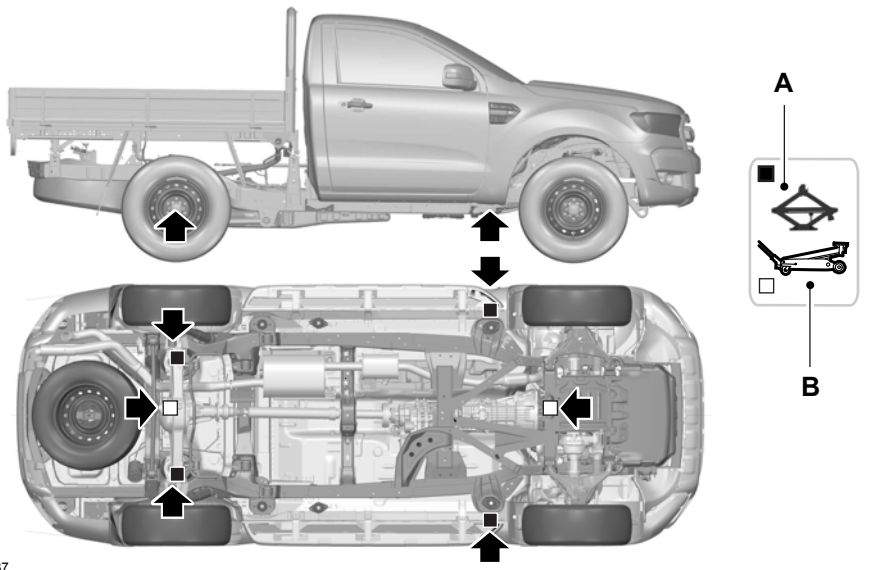


E134692

## Jacking and Lifting Points - Chassis Cab

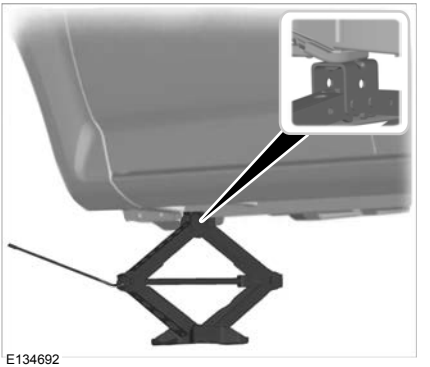
**WARNING**

You must use the specified jacking points.




E221937

A Emergency use only.
B Maintenance.


E134692

## Removing a Road Wheel

**WARNINGS**

Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.

Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

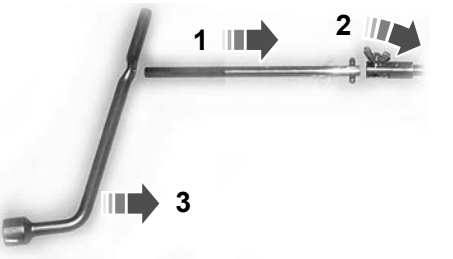
Chock the diagonally opposite wheel to the punctured tire with an appropriate block or wheel chock.

Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

**WARNINGS**

Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

**Note:** *Do not lay alloy road wheels face down on the ground.*

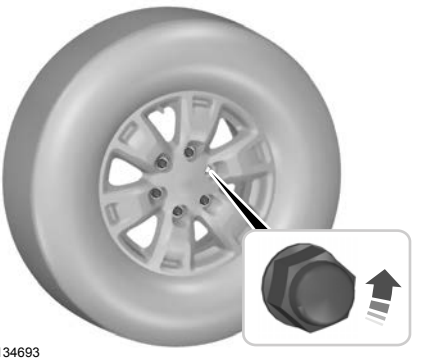


E79153

1. Assemble the jack handle.

**Note:** *Assemble the three handles to jack the rear of the vehicle.*

2. Loosen the lug nuts.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.


E134693

4. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

## Installing a Road Wheel

**WARNINGS**

Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).

Do not fit run flat tyres on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact your dealer for more details regarding compatibility.

Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

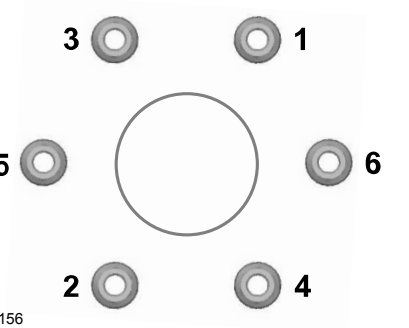
Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**Note:** *Alloy wheel lug nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).*

**Note:** *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts and finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.




4. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 284).
7. Position the projection of the cap and the projection of the hub correctly.

**WARNING**

Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *If the spare wheel is different in size or construction to the road wheels, have this replaced as soon as possible.*

## Stowing the Flat Tire

**WARNING**

Do not raise the spare wheel carrier without the wheel attached. Damage can occur to the winch mechanism if raised without a wheel attached.

1. Place the wheel flat on the ground, with the outside of the wheel facing up.
2. Tilt the bracket, and pass it through the center of the wheel.

3. Fully insert the jack handle into the guide hole and turn clockwise.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel Nut Torque

| Vehicle Type | Torque |
|---|---|
| All | 135 Nm |

### Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

| Tyre Size | Normal Load | | ECO** | | Full Load | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Front | Rear | Front | Rear | Front | Rear |
| 265 / 65 R17 112T* (SWB Ute) | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 35 psi/2.4 bar | | | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 44 psi/3.0 bar |
| 215/70 R16C 108/ 106 S* | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 54 psi/3.8 bar |
| 255/70 R16 111T* | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 44 psi/3.0 bar |
| 265/65 R17 112T* | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 44 psi/3.0 bar |
| 265/65 R17 112 H* | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 44 psi/3.0 bar |
| 265/60 R18 110T* | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 35 psi/2.4 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 38 psi/2.6 bar | 44 psi/3.0 bar |

*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

** ECO tire inflation pressures are recommended for optimal fuel consumption.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L DURATEC-HE (122KW/165PS) - MI4

| Engine type | 2.5L Duratec |
|---|---|
| Capacity | 2,488 $cm^3$ |
| Power output | 122 kW (165 PS) @ 5500 rpm |
| Max. torque | 225 Nm @ 4500 rpm |
| Continuous engine speed | 6000 rpm (5600 - Value Variants) |
| Max. Intermittent engine speed | 6500 rpm (5600 - Value Variants) |
| Idle speed | 700 ± 20 rpm |
| Induction system | Atmospheric |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 |
| Ignition system | Spark Ignition |

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (88KW/ 120PS) - PUMA

| Engine type | 2.2L TDCi |
|---|---|
| Capacity | 2,198 $cm^3$ |
| Power output | 88 kW (120 PS) @ 3700 rpm |
| Max.torque | 285 Nm @ 1500 - 2700 rpm |
| Continuous engine speed | 4500 rpm |
| Max.Intermittent engine speed | 4900 rpm |
| Idle speed | 800 ± 150 rpm |
| Induction system | Turbocharged intercooled |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 |
| Ignition system | Compression Ignition |

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (92KW/125PS) - PUMA

| Engine | 2.2L TDCi |
|---|---|
| Engine capacity. | 2,198 $cm^3$ |
| Power output. | 92 kW (125 PS) @ 3700 rpm |
| Maximum torque. | 320 Nm @ 1600 - 1700 rpm |
| Continuous engine speed. | 4500 rpm |
| Maximum engine speed. | 4900 rpm |
| Idle speed. | 800 ± 150 rpm |
| Induction system. | Turbocharged intercooled. |
| Firing order. | 1-3-4-2 |
| Ignition system. | Compression Ignition |

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (96KW/ 130PS) - PUMA

| Engine Type | 2.2L TDCi |
|---|---|
| Capacity | 2,198 $cm^3$ |
| Power output | 96kW (130 PS) @ 3200 rpm |
| Max.torque | 320 Nm @ 1600 - 2500 rpm |
| Continuous eng speed | 4500 rpm |
| Intermittent eng speed | 4900 rpm |
| Idle speed | 800 ± 150 rpm |
| Induction system | Turbocharged intercooled |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 |
| Ignition system | Compression ignition |

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (110KW/150PS) - PUMA

| Engine type | 2.2L TDCi |
|---|---|
| Capacity | 2,198 $cm^3$ |
| Power output | 110 kW (150 PS) @ 3700 rpm |
| Max. torque | 375 Nm @ 1500 - 2500 rpm |
| Continuous engine speed | 4500 rpm |
| Max. Intermittent engine speed | 4900 rpm |
| Idle speed | 800 ± 150 rpm |
| Induction system | Turbocharged intercooled |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 |
| Ignition system | Compression Ignition |

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (118KW/160PS) - PUMA

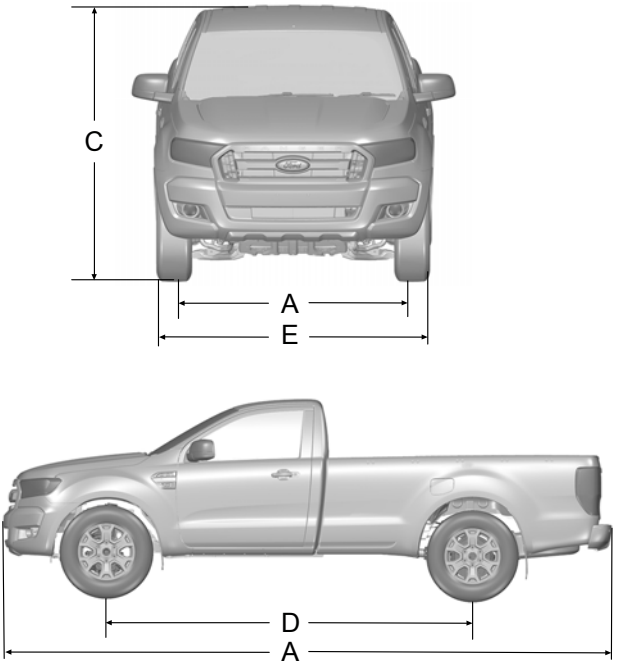
| Engine type | 2.2L TDCi |
|---|---|
| Capacity | 2,198 $cm^3$ |
| Power output | 118 kW (160 PS) @ 3200 rpm |
| Max. torque | 385 Nm @ 1600 - 2500 rpm |
| Continuous engine speed | 4500 rpm |
| Max. Intermittent engine speed | 4900 rpm |
| Idle speed | 800 ± 50 rpm |
| Induction system | Turbocharged intercooled |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 |
| Ignition system | Compression Ignition |

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (PUMA) DIESEL

| Engine type | 3.2L TDCi |
|---|---|
| Capacity | 3,198 $cm^3$ |
| Power output | 147kW (200 PS) @ 3000 rpm |
| Max.torque | 470 Nm @ 1750 - 2500 rpm |
| Continuous engine speed | 4500 rpm |
| Max.Intermittent engine speed | 4900 rpm |
| Idle speed | 700 ± 150 rpm |
| Induction system | Turbocharged intercooled |
| Firing order | 1-2-4-5-3 |
| Ignition system | Compression Ignition |

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

### Single cab




E207864

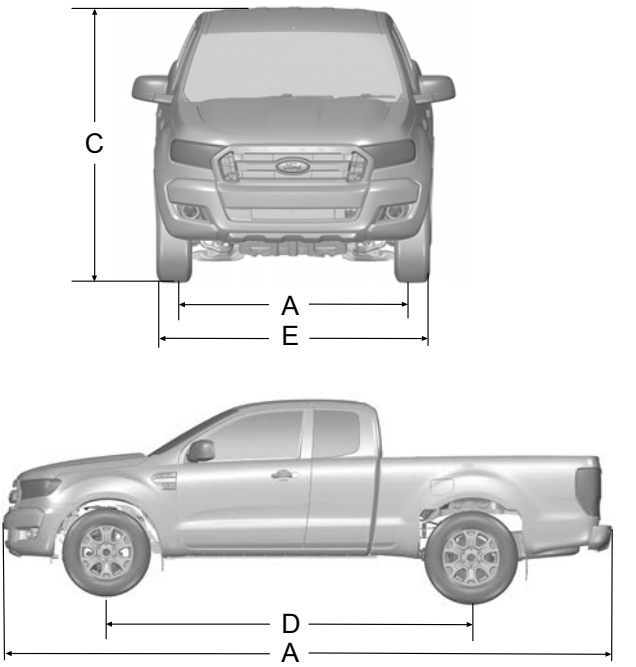
| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Maximum length | 5362 (211.1) |
| A | Maximum length - with bull bars | 5434 (214.0) |
| B | Overall width - excluding exterior mirrors | 1860 (73.2) |
| C | Overall height (4x2) | 1703 (67.0) |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| C | Overall height (4x2* or 4x4) | 1800-1806 (70.9-71.1) |
| D | Wheelbase | 3220 (126.8) |
| E | Track - front and rear (4x2) | 1590 (62.6) |
| E | Track - front and rear (4x2* or 4x4) | 1560 (61.4) |
| *Vehicles with increased ride height | | |

## Stretch cab




E207866

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Maximum length | 5362 (211.1) |
| B | Overall width - excluding exterior mirrors | 1860 (73.2) |
| C | Overall height (4x2) | 1706 (67.2) |
| C | Overall height (4x2* or 4x4) | 1804-1810 (71.0-71.4)[1] |
| D | Wheelbase | 3220 (126.8) |
| E | Track - front and rear (4x2) | 1590 (62.6) |
| E | Track - front and rear (4x2* or 4x4) | 1560 (61.4) |

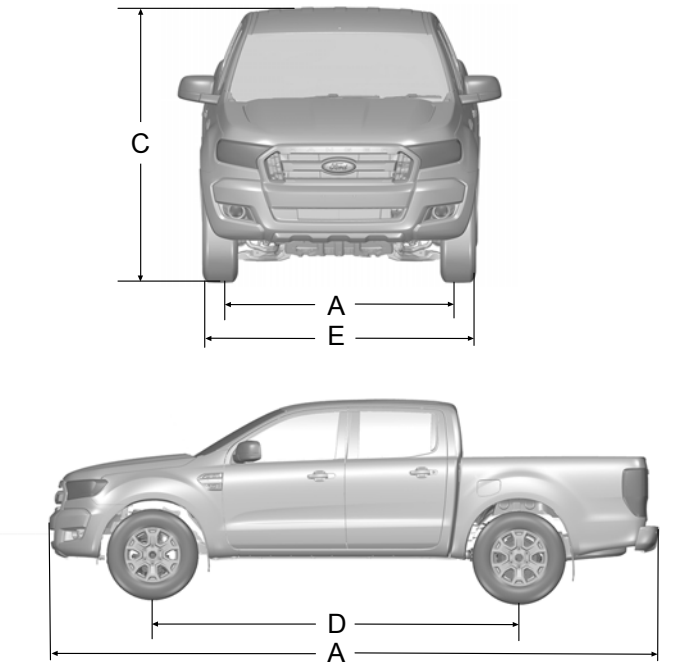
[1]Depending on tyre size

*Vehicles with increased ride height



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Double cab



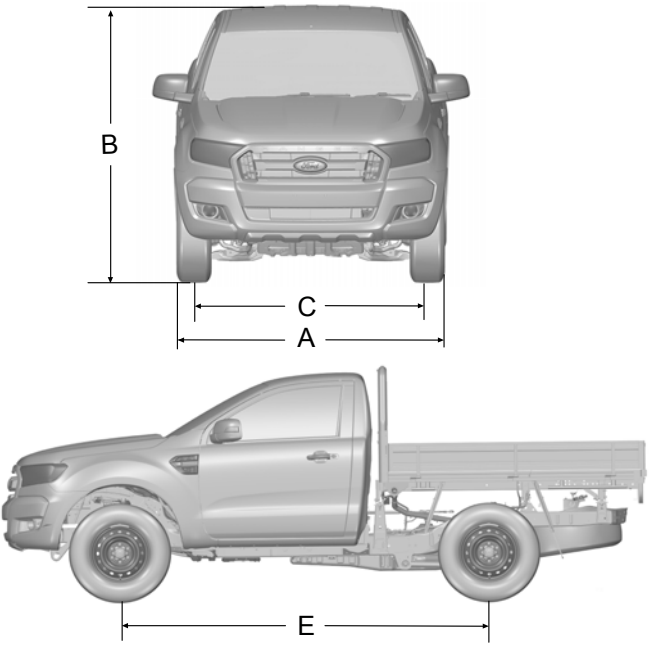

E207865

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Maximum length | 5362 (211.1) |
| A | Maximum length - with bull bars | 5434 (214.0) |
| B | Overall width - excluding exterior mirrors | 1860 (73.2) |
| C | Overall height (4x2) | 1716 (67.5) |
| C | Overall height (4x2* or 4x4) | 1815-1821 (71.4-72.8)[1] |
| D | Wheelbase | 3220 (126.8) |

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| E | Track - front and rear (4x2) | 1590 (62.6) |
| E | Track - front and rear (4x2* or 4x4) | 1560 (61.4) |
| [1] Depending on tyre size<br>*Vehicles with increased ride height | | |

# VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SHORT WHEELBASE, CHASSIS CAB

## Dimensions - Chassis Cab



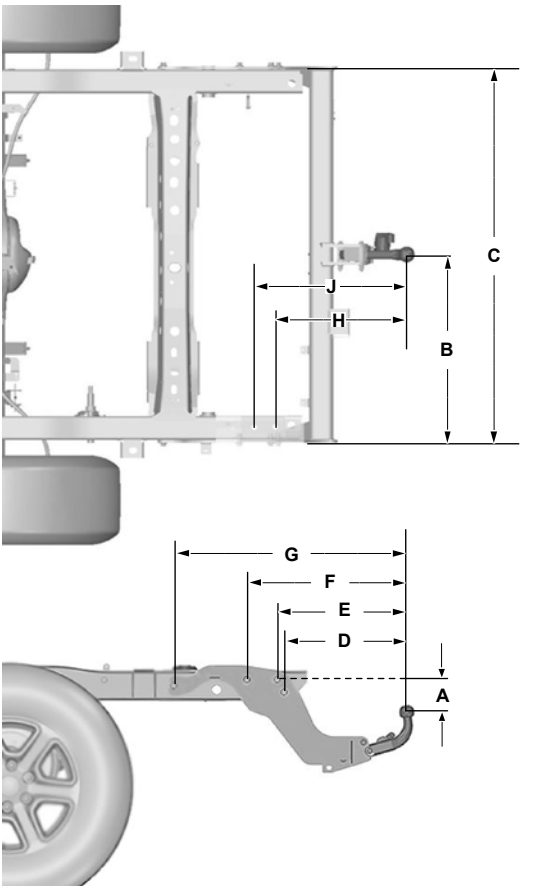

E212055

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Overall width including exterior mirrors | 2180 (85.8) |
| B | Overall height | 1837 (72.3) |
| C | Front track | 1560 (61.4) |
| C | Rear track | 1564 (61.5) |

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| D | Wheelbase | 2850 (112.2) |
| E | Overall length | 5160 (203.1) |

## TOWBAR DIMENSIONS

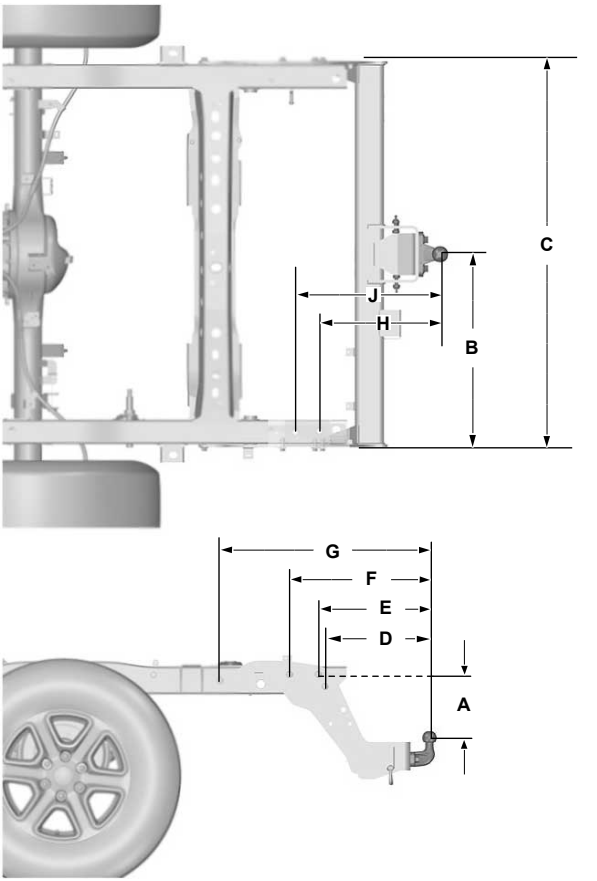
### 4x2 vehicles




E214213

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Attachment point - centre of tow ball (4x2) | 124 ± 5 (4.8 ± 0.2) |
| B | Centre of tow ball - side member (outside) | 598 (23.5) |
| C | Outside of side member | 1195 (47) |
| D | Centre of tow ball - centre of 1st attachment point (4x2) | 419 ± 5 (16.5 ± 0.2) |
| E | Centre of tow ball - centre of 2nd attachment point (4x2) | 442 ± 5 (17.4 ± 0.2) |
| F | Centre of tow ball - centre of 3rd attachment point (4x2) | 542 ± 5 (21.3 ± 0.2) |
| G | Center of tow ball - centre of 4th attachment point (4x2) | 785 ± 5 (30.9 ± 0.2) |
| H | Center of tow ball - centre of 5th attachment point (4x2) | 429 ± 5 (16.8 ± 0.2) |
| J | Center of tow ball - centre of 6th attachment point (4x2) | 504 ± 5 (19.8 ± 0.2) |

## 4x2 (vehicles with increased ride height) and 4x4 vehicles

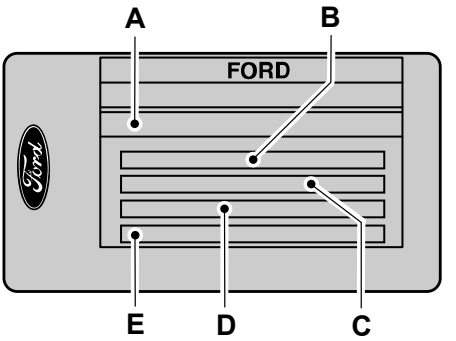



E214214

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Attachment point - centre of tow ball | 221.5 ± 5 (8.7 ± 0.2) |
| B | Centre of tow ball - side member (outside) | 598 (23.5) |

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension in mm (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| C | Outside of side member | 1195 (47) |
| D | Centre of tow ball - centre of 1st attachment point | 363 ± 5 (14.3 ± 0.2) |
| E | Centre of tow ball - centre of 2nd attachment point | 386 ± 5 (15.2 ± 0.2) |
| F | Centre of tow ball - centre of 3rd attachment point | 486 ± 5 (19.1 ± 0.2) |
| G | Center of tow ball - centre of 4th attachment point | 728 ± 5 (28.7 ± 0.2) |
| H | Center of tow ball - centre of 5th attachment point | 373 ± 5 (14.7 ± 0.2) |
| J | Center of tow ball - centre of 6th attachment point | 448 ± 5 (17.6 ± 0.2) |

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE



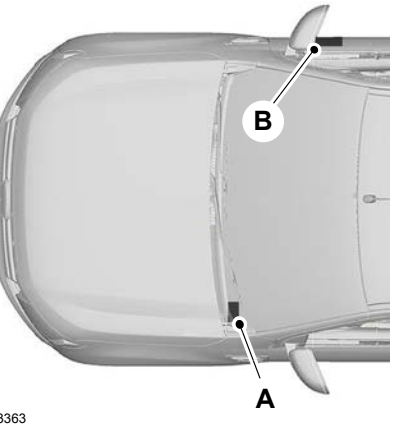

E85610

A Vehicle identification number.
B Gross vehicle weight.
C Gross train weight.
D Maximum front axle weight.
E Maximum rear axle weight.

The vehicle identification plate with your vehicle identification number and maximum weights is located on the bottom of the lock side of the passenger door aperture.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.




E133363

The vehicle identification number is also stamped beneath the front door on the chassis, on the right-hand side.

**Vehicle fluids**

| Part | Recommended fluid | Specification |
|---|---|---|
| Engine oil - Duratec 2.5L | 5W-30 GF4 | WSS–M2C946–A<br>WSS-M2C913-D |
| Engine oil - Diesel* | SAE 5W-30 | WSS-M2C913-C<br>WSS-M2C913-D |
| Engine oil - Diesel** | SAE 5W-30 | WSS-M2C921-A<br>WSS-M2C913-D |
| Engine oil - Diesel*** | SAE 0W-30 | WSS-M2C950-A |
| Transmission oil - Manual | BOT 350 M3 | WSS-M2C200-D2 |
| Transmission oil - Automatic | Motorcraft MERCON® LV | WSS-M2C938-A (XT-10 QLV) |
| Brake and clutch fluid | Clariant SafeBrake | WSS-M6C65-A2 Super Dot4-14M |
| Power assisted steering fluid (Vehicles fitted with hydraulic power assisted steering - HPAS) | Motorcraft MERCON® LV | WSS-M2C938-A (XT-10 QLV) |
| Coolant | Chevron / Arteco | WSS-M97B44-D (XLC-0F02) |
| Front axle oil | - | WSP-M2C197-A |
| Rear axle oil | - | WSP-M2C197-A |
| Rear axle oil (LSD) | - | WSP-M2C197 and EST-M2C118-A |
| Transfer case oil | Motorcraft MERCON® LV | WSS-M2C938-A (XT-10 QLV) |

| Part | Recommended fluid | Specification |
|---|---|---|
| Air conditioning refrigerant | R134A | WSH-M17B19-A |
| Air conditioning Compressor lubricant | POLYALKYLENE GLYCOL | WSH-M1C231-B |

*For markets with low sulphur content (less than 350 ppm)

**For markets with high sulphur content (more than 350 ppm)

***For markets with low sulphur content (less than 50 ppm) AND Stage 5 emissions

Your engine has been designed to be used with Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit whilst maintaining the durability of your engine.

**Topping up the oil:**

**Engine oil - Diesel (for markets with low sulphur content less than 350 ppm):** If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification, you must use SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

**Engine oil - Diesel (for markets with high sulphur content greater than 350 ppm):** If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined in the vehicle fluids table, you must use SAE 10W-30 that meets the specification defined by API CH-4.

Using topping up oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

**Capacities**

| Variant | Item | Capacity |
|---|---|---|
| 2.5L Duratec | Engine oil with filter | 6.7 L |
| 2.5L Duratec | Engine oil without filter | 6.4 L |
| 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi | Engine oil with filter | 8.55 L |
| 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi | Engine oil without filter | 8.15 L |
| 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi | Engine oil with filter | 9.75 L |
| 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi | Engine oil without filter | 9.35 L |
| Manual transmission | Clutch fluid | Between the MIN line and the MAX line |
| Manual transmission | Manual transmission oil | 2.7 L |
| Automatic transmission (dry) | Automatic transmission oil | 10.5 L |
| Automatic transmission (wet) | Automatic transmission oil | 9 L |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Variant | Item | Capacity |
|---|---|---|
| Air conditioning | Air conditioning compressor lubricant | 200 ml |
| Air conditioning | Air conditioning system refrigerant | 0.975 ± 0.025 kg |
| All | Brake fluid | Between the MIN line and the MAX line |
| 2.5 Duratec | Engine coolant | 11.5 L |
| 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (MT82) | Engine coolant | 11.5 L |
| 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (AT) | Engine coolant | 11.9 L |
| 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi | Engine coolant | 13.5 L |
| All | Windshield washer fluid | 5.5 L |
| Vehicles fitted with hydraulic power assisted steering - HPAS | Power assisted steering fluid | 1.2 L |
| All | Fuel tank | 80 L |

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

| Radio reception factors | |
|---|---|
| Distance and Strength | The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception. |
| Terrain | Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception. |
| Station overload | When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system. |

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

**Note:** *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

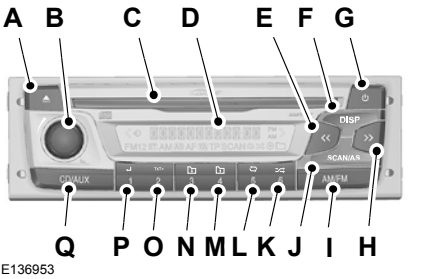
In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** *Some systems do not have a CD player.*




A **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 325).

B **Volume and Menu:** Turn the dial to adjust the volume or scroll through on-screen choices.

C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.

D LCD display.

E **Seek Down and Fast-Rewind:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD. Press and hold to fast-rewind the track.

F **Display:** Displays the current time or date and RDS information.

G **On, Off and Mute:** Long press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Short press the button to mute the audio system.

H **Seek up and Fast-forward:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD. Press and hold to fast-forward the track.

I **AM/FM:** Press the button to select the source to radio and radio waveband.

J **Scan/AS:** Press the button to scan and auto store the radio stations.

K **Station preset 6 and shuffle:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. Press the button to shuffle the tracks in CD.

L **Station preset 5 and Repeat:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. Press the button to repeat the current track.

M **Station preset 4 and Next folder:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. Press the button to go to the next folder in CD.

N **Station preset 3 and Previous folder:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. Press the button to go to the next folder in CD.

O **Station preset 2 and Scroll display:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. Press the button to scroll the items in the LCD display.

P **Station preset 1 and Menu back:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. Press the button to return to previous screen in the display.

Q **CD or AUX:** Press the button to toggle between the source CD and AUX. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 325). See **Audio Input Jack** (page 329).

## On, Off Control

Press the On, Off control. This will also operate the unit for up to one hour with the ignition turned off.

The radio will switch off automatically after one hour.

### AM/FM

Press the AM/FM button to select from the wavebands available.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

The selector can also be used to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

## Station Tuning Control

### Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

### Manual Tuning

1. Select **RADIO** mode and then **MANUAL TUNE**.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.

### Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Select **RADIO** mode.
2. Short press the **SCAN/AS** button, the radio will automatically scan up the selected waveband.
3. Short press the **SCAN/AS** button again to continue listening to a station.

## Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons until you hear a beep. When the station has been stored, the preset number along with the station name or frequency is displayed for confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## Autostore Control

This will store up to a maximum of the six strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

1. Select **RADIO** mode.
2. Long press the **SCAN/AS** button.
3. When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

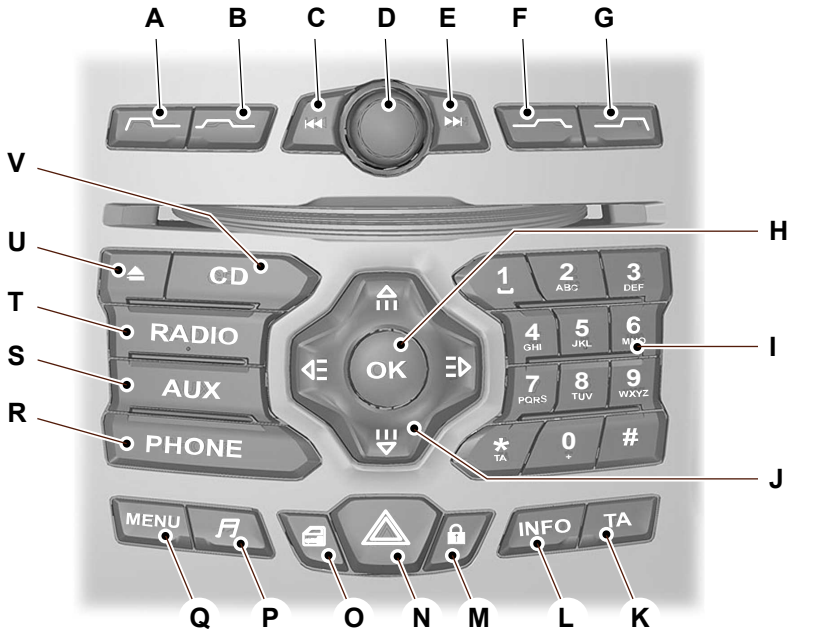


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



A **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

B **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

C **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.

D **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

E **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.

F **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

G **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

H **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.

I **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. In CD mode, press a number to select a track. In phone mode, use the buttons to dial a phone number.

J **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.

K **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.

L **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and IPod information.

M Door lock button.

N Hazard warning flasher switch.

O Door lock indicator.

P **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.

Q **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.

R **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system.

S **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

T **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

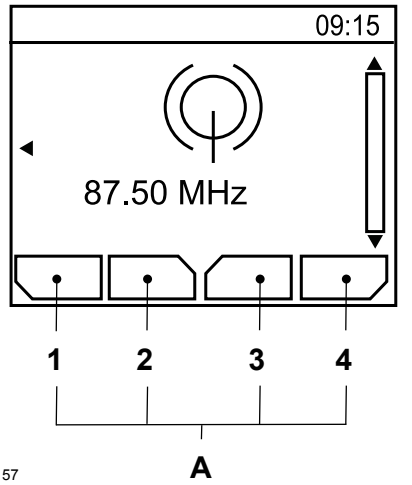
U **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.

V **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *An integrated multi-function display, located above the audio system shows important information about your audio system controls.*




A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the function displays in the screen.

## On, Off Control

Press the On, Off control. This will also operate the unit for up to one hour with the ignition turned off.

The radio will switch off automatically after one hour.

## Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the **SOUND** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

## Station Tuning Control

### Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

### Manual Tuning

1. Press **function button 2**.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

### Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press **function button 3**.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.

3. Press **function button 3** again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons until you hear a beep. When the station has been stored, the preset number along with the station name or frequency is displayed for confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## Autostore Control

This will store up to a maximum of the six strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

1. Press and hold **function button 1** or the **RADIO** button.
2. When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

## Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and **Traffic announcement** will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If TA is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non TA station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

### Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

**Note:** *If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

## Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the **MENU** button and select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
2. Select **AVC LEVEL** or **ADAPTIVE VOL**.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Digital Signal Processing (DSP)

### DSP Occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in the vehicle to each seat. Select the sitting position for which the audio is to be correctly enhanced.

### DSP Equalizer

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

### Changing the DSP Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to the required DSP function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system (RDS) or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **NEWS** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **ALTERNAT FREQ.** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ.** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

### Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **RDS REGIONAL** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

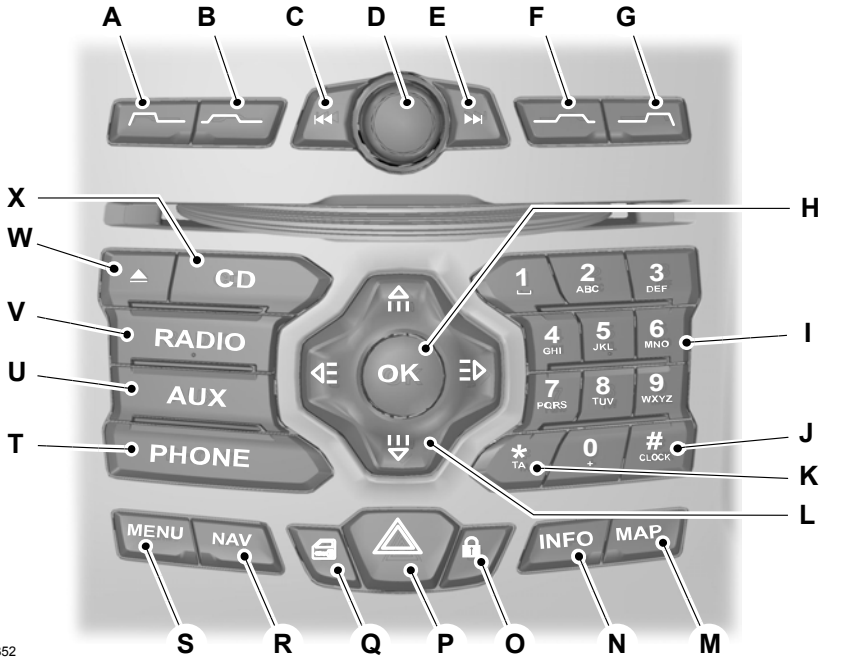
## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/ NAVIGATION SYSTEM

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015




A **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

B **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

C **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.

D **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

E **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.

F **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

G **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

H **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.

I **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. In CD mode, press a number to select a track. In phone mode, use the buttons to dial a phone number. In Navigation mode, use the buttons to enter the destination.

J **Clock:** Press the button to set the clock.

K **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.

L **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.

M **MAP:** Press the button to view the map.

N **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and IPod information.

O Door lock indicator.

P Hazard warning flasher switch.

Q Door lock button.

R **NAV:** Press the button to navigate the route.

S **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.

T **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system.

U **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

V **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

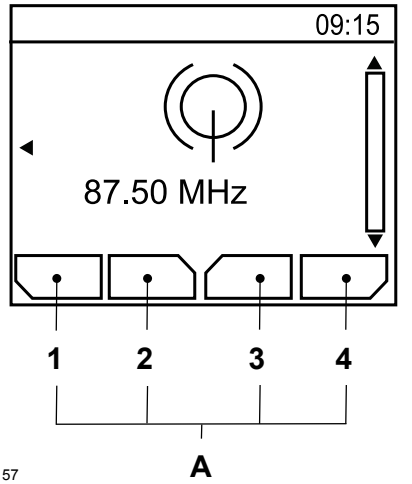
W **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.

X **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

**Note:** *An integrated multi-function display, located above the audio system shows important information about your audio system controls.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015




A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the function displays in the screen.

## On, Off Control

Press the On, Off control. This will also operate the unit for up to one hour with the ignition turned off.

The radio will switch off automatically after one hour.

## Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

## Station Tuning Control

### Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

### Manual Tuning

1. Press **function button 2**.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

### Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press **function button 3**.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press **function button 3** again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

## Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons until you hear a beep. When the station has been stored, the preset number along with the station name or frequency is displayed for confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## Autostore Control

This will store up to a maximum of the six strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

1. Press and hold **function button 1** or the **RADIO** button.
2. When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

## Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and **Traffic announcement** will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If TA is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non TA station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

### Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

### Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

**Note:** *If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

## Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the **MENU** button and select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
2. Select **AVC LEVEL** or **ADAPTIVE VOL**.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

5. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system (RDS) or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **NEWS** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **ALTERNAT FREQ.** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ.** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

## Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **RDS REGIONAL** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/ NAVIGATION SYSTEM

**WARNING**

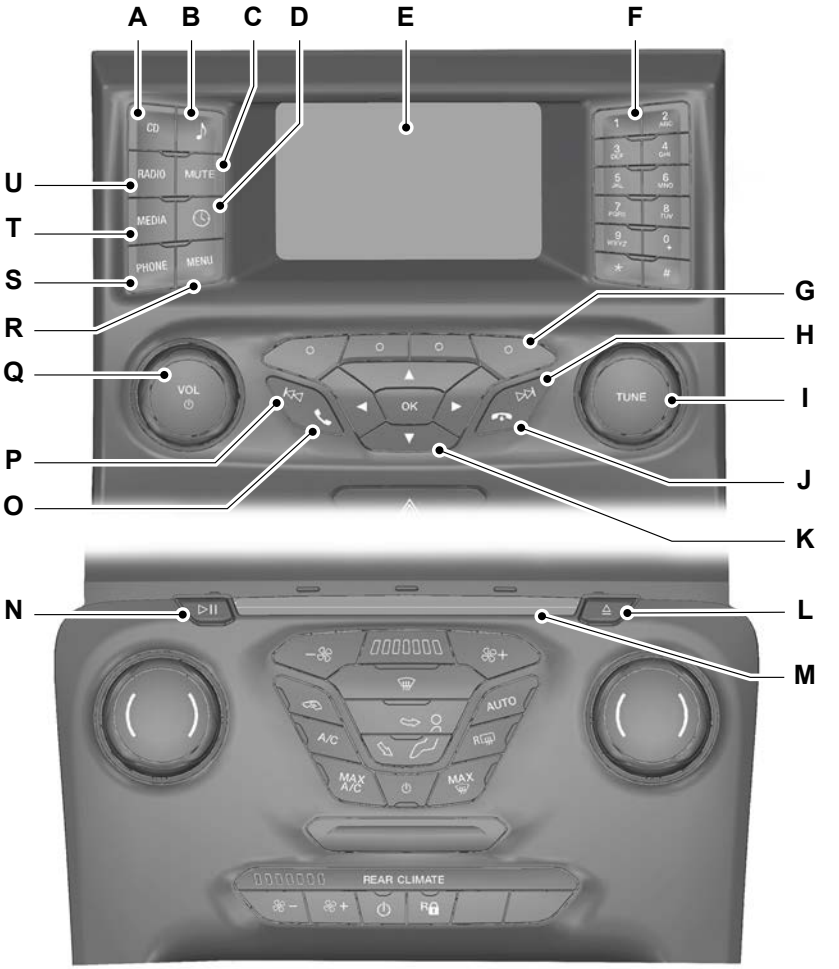
Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

**Note:** *Some features may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015


A
B
C
D
E
F
U
T
S
R
Q
P
O
G
H
I
J
K
N
L
M
CD
RADIO
MUTE
MEDIA
PHONE
MENU
VOL
OK
TUNE
AUTO
A/C
MAX A/C
MAX
REAR CLIMATE

E200469

A **CD:** Press this button to listen to a CD. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select on-screen options of Repeat or Shuffle.

B **SOUND:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

C **MUTE / TA:** Press the button to mute the playing media / Press this button to turn Traffic Announcement on or off.

D **Clock:** Press this button to access the clock setting. Use the center arrow controls to change the hours and minutes. You can also set the clock by pressing the **MENU** button and scrolling to Clock Settings.

E **Display screen:** Shows audio and SYNC information.

F **Number block:** In radio mode, store your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, press a button to select a track. In phone mode, press the buttons to enter a phone number.

G **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

H **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the next strong radio station or memory preset. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

I **TUNE:**In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments.

J **End phone call:** Press this button to end a phone call.

K **Cursor arrows and OK:** Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit.

L **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.

M **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

N **Play/Pause:** Press to either play or pause a track when listening to a CD.

O **Pick-up or Make phone call:** Press this button to either pick-up an incoming phone call or to make a phone call.

p **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station or memory preset. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Q **VOL and Power:** Press this button to turn the system off and on. Turn it to adjust the volume.

R **MENU:** Press this button to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this section.

S **PHONE:** Press this button to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See **SYNC™** (page 332).

T **MEDIA:** Press this button to access your auxiliary inputs or switch between bluetooth audio devices you plug into the input jack or USB port.

U **RADIO:** Press this button to listen to the radio or change radio frequencies bands. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select different radio functions.

## AUDIO UNIT CLOCK AND DATE DISPLAYS

### Changing the Time

The clock can be set at any time when the system is in the one hour mode or the ignition switch is in the ACC or ON position.

**Note:** *Vehicles with AM/FM/CD: The time can be adjusted using the hour and minute buttons on the screen.*

To advance the hours, press the **HOUR SET** button. To advance the minutes, press the **MINUTE SET** button while the time is flashing.

**Note:** *Vehicles with Bluetooth/NAV: The time can be adjusted using the clock button on the audio control panel.*

**Note:** *The time can be adjusted using the cursor arrow buttons on the audio control panel.*

#### Vehicles with AM/FM/CD

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate the **Volume** button to select the date/time.
3. Short press the **OK** button to enter date/time.
4. Rotate the **Volume** button to select the hour set and enter.
5. Rotate the **Volume** button to adjust the hours.
6. Use **BACK** button to return to previous menu.
7. Rotate the **Volume** button to select minute set and enter.
8. Rotate the **Volume** button to adjust minutes.
9. Use the **OK** button to save the settings.

#### Vehicles with AM/FM/Cd/Bluetooth/NAV

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow button to select the clock settings.
3. Press **OK** button or right arrow button to enter clock settings.
4. Use the up and down arrow button to select the set time.
5. Use the up and down arrow button to adjust hours.
6. Use the right and left arrow button to scroll to the minutes.
7. Use the up and down arrow button to adjust minutes.
8. Use the **OK** button to save the settings.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Exact Hour Adjustment

You can set the time to the beginning of an hour using this feature.

- Press the **CLOCK** button for about two seconds until a beep is heard. The clock's current time will flash.
- Press the **CLOCK** button again and the time will be adjusted as follows:

Example

- Current set time between 12:01 and 12:29 will change to 12:00 exactly.
- Current set time between 12:30 and 12:59 will change to 1:00 exactly.

**Note:** *If the power supply to the unit is interrupted (if the fuse blows or the vehicle's battery is disconnected), the clock will need to be reset.*

## COMPACT DISC PLAYER

### Compact Disc Playback

**Note:** *During playback, the display indicates the disc, track and time that have elapsed since the start of the track.*

During radio reception, press **CD** once to start CD playback.

After a disc is loaded, playback starts immediately.

### Track Selection

- Press the seek up once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
- Press the seek down once to replay the current track. If pressed within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track plays.
- Press the seek down repeatedly to select previous tracks.
- Press the up or down arrow to select the required track, then press **OK**.

You can select a track by using the numeric keypad. Dial the required track number until complete (for example, 1 then 2 for track 12), or dial the number and directly press **OK**.

### Fast Forward and Reverse

Press and hold the seek down or up to search backward or forward within the tracks on the disc.

### Shuffle and Random

Random track playback, also known as shuffle, plays all tracks on the CD in random order.

#### Type 1

Press the **SHUFFLE** in CD mode.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system shuffle tracks for the whole CD, or within the current folder.*

#### Type 2

Press the **MENU** and select CD MODE.

Select **SHUFFLE**, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system shuffle tracks for the whole CD, or within the current folder.*

#### Type 3

Press function button 2.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system shuffle tracks for the whole CD, or within the current folder. Pressing function button 2 toggles these options.*

Use the seek up or down button to select the next track to shuffle, if required.

### Repeat Compact Disc Tracks

#### Type 1

Press **REPEAT** in CD mode.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system repeat the current track or all tracks within the current folder.*

**Type 2**

Press the **MENU** button and select CD MODE.

Select **REPEAT**, which then enables the function to be selected on or off. The track will replay once ended.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system repeat the current track or all tracks within the current folder.*

**Type 3**

Press function button 1.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system repeat the current track or all tracks within the current folder. Pressing function button 1 toggles these options.*

## Compact Disc Track Scanning

The Scan function allows you to preview each track for approximately 8 seconds.

**Type 1**

Press **CD/AUX** to select CD MODE.

Short press **SCAN/AS** button to scan CD.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system scan tracks on the CD or within the current folder. Pressing **SCAN/AS** button toggles these options.*

**Type 2**

Various scan modes are possible, according to the type of CD currently playing.

Press the **MENU** button and select CD MODE.

Select **SCAN**, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system scan tracks on the CD or within the current folder. Pressing **OK** button toggles these options.*

**Type 3**

Press function button 3.

**Note:** *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system scan tracks on the CD or within the current folder. Pressing function button 3 toggles these options.*

## MP3 File Playback

MP3 (MPEG 1 Audio Layer-3) is a standard technology and format for compressing audio data. This allows a more efficient use of the media.

You can play MP3 files recorded on CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW formats. The disc must be in the ISO 9660 level 1 or level 2 format, or Joliet or Romeo in the expansion format. You can also use a disc recorded in multi session.

**ISO 9660 Format**

This is the most common international standard for the logical format of files and folders on a CD-ROM.

There are several specification levels. In Level 1, file names must be in the 8.3 format (no more than eight characters in the name, no more than three characters in the extension MP3 and WMA) and in capital letters.

Folder names can be no longer than eight characters. There can be no more than eight folder levels (trees). Level 2 specifications allow file names up to 31 characters long.

Each folder can have up to eight trees.

For Joliet or Romeo in the expansion format, consider these restrictions when configuring your CD writing software.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Multi Session

This recording method enables adding of data using the track-at-once method.

Conventional CDs begin at a CD control area called the lead-in and end at an area called lead-out. A multi session CD is a CD having multiple sessions, with each segment from lead-in to lead-out regarded as a single session.

CD-Extra: The format that records audio (audio CD data) as tracks on session 1, and records data as tracks on session 2.

Mixed CD: In this format, data records as track 1 and audio (audio CD data) records as track 2.

### File Formats

With formats other than ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2, folder names or file names may not display correctly.

When naming, be sure to add the file extension MP3 to the file name.

If you put the extension MP3 to a file other than MP3, the unit cannot recognize the file correctly and generates random noise that could damage your speakers.

The following discs take a longer time to start playback.

- A disc recorded with complicated tree structure.
- A disc recorded in multi session.
- A non-finalized disc, where you can add more data.

### Playing a Multi Session Disc

When the first track of the first session is audio CD data only, the audio CD data of the first session plays. Non-audio CD data, MP3 file information (such as track number and time) displays with no sound.

When the first track of the first session is not audio CD data:

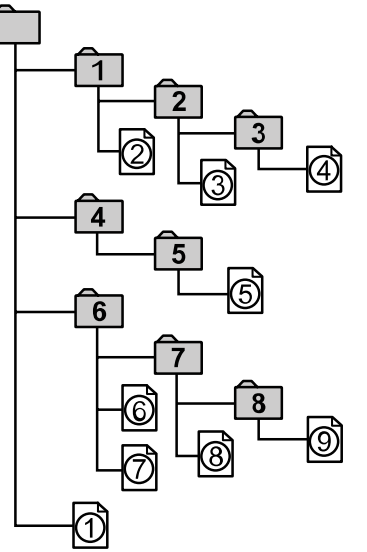
- If an MP3 file is on the disc, the system skips these file and other data. Audio CD data is not recognized.
- If no MP3 file is in the disc, nothing plays. Audio CD data is not recognized.

### MP3 Files Playback Order

The playback order of the folders and files are as shown.

**Note:** *The system skips any folder that does not include an MP3 file.*

To specify a desired playback order before the folder or file name, input the order by number (for example, 01 or 02) then record the contents onto a disc. The order differs depending on the writing software.




E104206

### ID3 Tag Version 2

The following occurs when an MP3 file containing a tag plays:

- When skipping a portion of a tag (at the beginning of the track) there is no sound output. Skip time changes depending on the tag capacity. Example: At 64 kbytes, it is about 2 seconds (with RealJukebox).
- The displayed elapsed playing time when skipping a portion of the tag is inaccurate. For MP3 files of a bit rate other than 128 kbps, time does not display accurately during playback.
- When an MP3 file is created with MP3 conversion software (such as RealJukebox - a registered trademark of RealNetworks Inc.), the tag generates automatically.

### MP3 Navigation

You can record MP3 tracks on the CD in several ways. You can place them in the root directory like a conventional audio CD, or in folders that may represent categories, such as album, artist, or genre.

The normal playing sequence on CDs with multiple folders is:

- Play the tracks within the root (top level) first
- Then the tracks in any folder(s) within the root
- Then move onto the second folder, and so forth.

To navigate to a track:

1. Press the up or down arrow buttons to enter the track list.
2. Navigate the hierarchy using the arrow buttons to select another folder or track (file).
3. Press **OK** to select a highlighted track.

### MP3 Display Options

When an MP3 disc is playing, certain information encoded in each track can display. Such information normally includes:

- The file name.
- The folder name.
- ID3 information, which might be the album or artist name.

The unit normally shows the file name that is playing. To select one of the other items of information, press **INFO** repeatedly until the required item appears in the display.

### CD Text Display Options

When an audio disc with CD text is playing, limited information encoded in each track can display. Such information normally includes:

- The disc name.
- The artist name.
- The track name.

**Note:** *You can select these display options in the same way as MP3 displays.*

### Ending Compact Disc Playback

To restore radio reception on all units, press **RADIO**.

**Note:** *The CD does not eject. The disc pauses at the point where radio reception returned.*

To resume CD playback, press **CD** again.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## AUDIO INPUT JACK

**WARNINGS**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

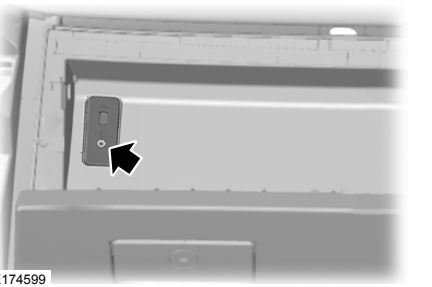
Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *For optimum performance when using any auxiliary device set the volume on the device high. This will reduce audio interference when charging the device via the vehicle power supply socket.*

**Type 1**


E133606

**Type 2**


E174599

The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male connectors (3.5 mm) at each end.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position park (P) (vehicle with an automatic transmission) or neutral (vehicle with a manual transmission).
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.



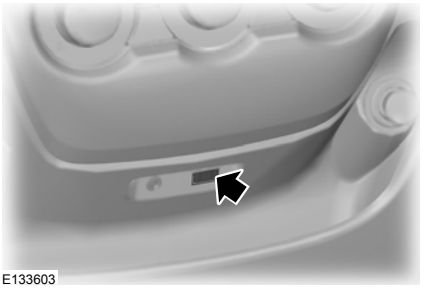
Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** until **LINE IN** or **LINE IN ACTIVE** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

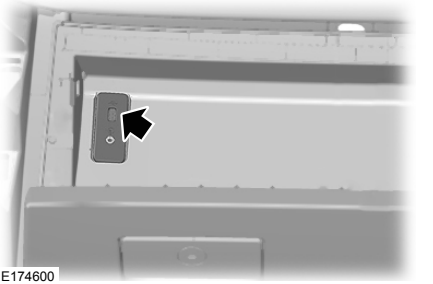
Use the vehicle audio unit buttons to restore playback from the vehicle audio unit, while your portable music player remains connected.

## USB PORT

### Type 1


E133603

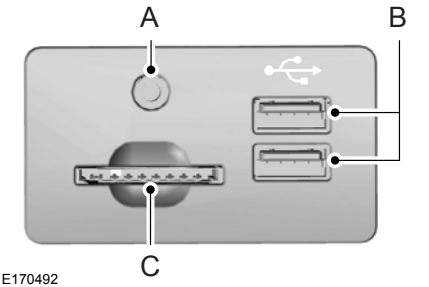
### Type 2


E174600

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported).

## MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

The media hub is located in front of the gearshift.



E170492

A Line in.
B USB ports.
C SD card slot.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

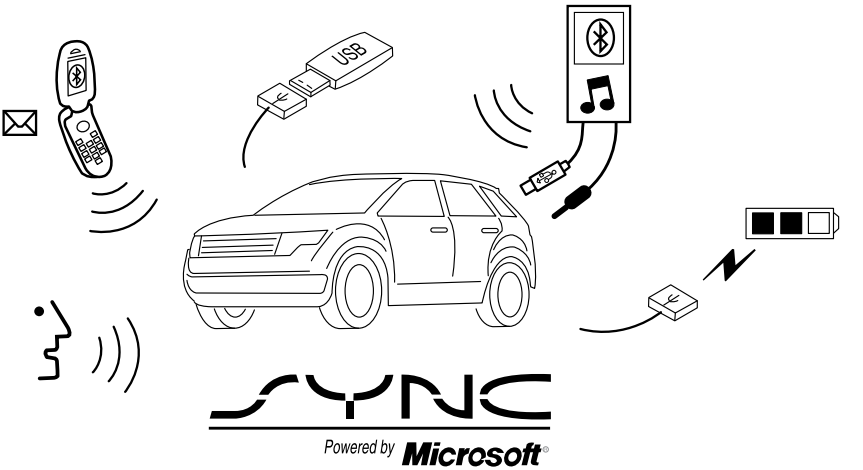
## AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

| Audio unit display | Rectification |
|---|---|
| Please check CD | General error message for CD fault conditions, such as cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correct way up. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact your dealer. |
| CD drive malfunction | General error message for CD fault conditions such as possible mechanism fault. |
| CD drive high temp. | Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down. |
| IPOD ERROR READING DEVICE | General error message for iPod fault conditions, such as cannot read the data. Ensure iPod is inserted correctly. If error persists contact your dealer. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GENERAL INFORMATION




E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Use Emergency Assistance and applications, via SYNC Applink *
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages (if your device supports this)
- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this)

*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

## Safety Information

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **SYNC™** (page 332).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 347).

# USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

## Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

### Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button located on the steering wheel. A list of available commands appears in the display.

| Global voice commands | |
|---|---|
| (cancel \| stop \| exit) | This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds. |
| help | This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions. |
| main menu | This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point. |

### System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

#### Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| voice settings | Provides access to change the interaction level. |

Then any of the following:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| interaction mode advanced | Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts. |
| interaction mode novice | Provides more detailed interaction and guidance. |

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For example, the system may ask if the command phone is correct.

Press the voice button. When prompted:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| voice settings | Provides access to change the confirmation prompt setting. |

Then any of the following:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| confirmation prompts off | Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings. |
| confirmation prompts on | Clarifies your voice command with a short question. |

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When switched on, the system may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| media candidate lists off | Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions. |
| media candidate lists on | Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions. |
| phone candidate lists off | Makes a best guess from the cell phone suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions. |
| phone candidate lists on | Clarifies your voice command for cell phone suggestions. |

### Changing the Voice Settings

You can change the voice settings using the information and entertainment display.

Press the **MENU** button.

**You can then select the following:**

| Action | Message |
|---|---|
| SYNC-Settings | |
| Voice settings | Enters menu for voice options. |

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

### Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

**Note:** *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
5. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

**Note:** *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on) or downloading your phonebook.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015


The information display may show your cell phone's battery charge level and signal strength.

### Using Voice Commands


Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice Command | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| (pair ([Bluetooth] device \| phone \| Bluetooth audio) \| add phone) | Follow the instructions on the audio display. |

Words in square brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

## Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

**Note:** *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
8. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

**Note:** *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone or downloading your phonebook.

## Cell Phone Voice Commands


Press the voice button and when prompted say:

| Voice Command |
|---|
| (phone \| Blackberry \| iPhone) |
| **Then say any of the following:** |
| call (___) |
| call ___ at home |
| call ___ ((in\|at) [the] office \| at work) |
| call ___ on (cell \| mobile) |

| Voice Command |
|---|
| call ___ on other |
| dial [[a] number] [1] |
| ([go to] privacy [on] \| transfer to phone \| handsfree off) [2] |
| (hold call [on] \| place call on hold) [2] |
| join (calls \| call) [2] |
| mute call [on] [2] |
| (mute call off \| un-mute call) [2] |
| (turn ringer on \| silent mode off) |
| (turn ringer off \| silent mode [on]) |

| Voice Command |
|---|
| [text] (messages \| message) [3] |
| help |

___ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Home".

[1] See **Dial** table below.

[2] These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

[3] See the text message table below.

### Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

| Voice Command | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Pound | This will add a # symbol to the number or name. |
| Number | 0 (zero) to 9 (nine) |
| Asterisk or Star | This will add a * symbol to the number or name. |
| clear | Deletes all entered digits |
| (delete \| correct) | Deletes the last set of entered digits. |
| Plus | This will add a + symbol to the number or name. |

**Note:** *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.*

### Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Hear it |

### Changing Devices Using Voice Commands

Using SYNC, you can easily access multiple phones, ipods, or USB devices. To switch devices say:

| Voice Command | |
|---|---|
| (connect \| device) ___ | You can state the name of the desired device, such as "My iPhone","My Galaxy" or"My iPod". SYNC may ask you to confirm the type of device (Phone, USB, or Bluetooth Audio). |

## Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

| Voice Command | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| call [[a] name] | |
| dial [[a] number] | SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it. |

**When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:**

| Voice Command | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| (dial \| send) | This initiates the call. |
| (delete \| correct) | To erase the last spoken digit. |
| clear | To erase all spoken digits. |

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

## Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

## Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Mic. off | Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again. |
| Privacy | Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private. |
| Hold | Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold. |
| Dial a number | Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords. |
| Join calls | Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call.<br>1. Select the option for more.<br>2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more.<br>3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the **OK** button. |
| Phonebook | Access your phonebook contacts.<br>1. Select the option for more.<br>2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the **OK** button.<br>3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.<br>4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.<br>5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection. |
| Call history | Access your call history log.<br>1. Select the option for more.<br>2. Scroll to the option until call history appears. Press the **OK** button.<br>3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed).<br>4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.<br>5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

**Note:** *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Dial a number | Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad. |
| Redial | Redial the last number called (if available). Press the **OK** button to select. |
| Phonebook | Access your downloaded phonebook.<br>1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list.<br>2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.<br>3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.<br>4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection. |
| Call history | Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls.<br>1. Press the **OK** button to select.<br>2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection.<br>3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection. |
| Speed Dial | Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad. |
| Text messaging | Send, download and delete text messages. |
| BT Devices | Access the following option for Bluetooth device menu listings: |
| | Add |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| | Delete |
| | Conn. |
| | Discon. |
| | Master |
| Phone settings | View various settings and features on your cell phone. |

## Text Messaging

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

**Note:** *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

### Receiving a Text Message

**Note:** *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

**Note:** *This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 5 km/h or less.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

**To hear the message you can say:**

| Voice command | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| (listen to \| read) ([text] message) | Select this option to have the system read the message to you. |

**Using the screen you also have the following options:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| Ignore | Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox. | |
| View | Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select: | |
| | More... | If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options: |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Reply to sender | Press the **OK** button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send. |
| | | Call sender | Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message. |
| | | Forward msg. | Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number. |

### Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following:

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| New | When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display. Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages. |
| View | Allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message. |
| Delete | Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted. |
| More... | Allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone. |

#### *Sending a Text Message*

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

**Note:** *You can send text messages two ways. You can chose a contact from your phonebook, call history or by entering a phone number and selecting the text option from the audio display. You can also reply to a received message in the inbox.*

**Note:** *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

## Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Set as master | If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu. |
| Phone status | See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu. |
| Set ringtone | Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option.<br>1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone.<br>2. Press the **OK** button to select. |
| Text msg notify | Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button to turn the audible tone on or off. |
| Phonebook pref. | Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between the options in the table below. |

To modify the phone book preferences, choose from the following:



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| Add contacts | Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook. | |
| Delete | When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the **OK** button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings. | |
| Download now | Press the **OK** button to select and download your phonebook to the system. | |
| Auto-download | When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted. When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system. Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent. | |
| Sorting Pref. | Enabling this feature allows you to select how your contacts are displayed. You can select: | |
| | First/Last name | Last/First name |

## Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

### Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Add | Pair additional cell phones to the system.<br>1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process.<br>2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for **SYNC** on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.<br>3. Select SYNC on your cell phone. |

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| | 4. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phones and the vehicles display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*<br>5. When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no.<br>6. Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, the system may ask you extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response. |
| Delete | After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device. |
| Master | The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk.<br>Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone. |
| Conn. | Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time. |
| Discon. | Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process. |

*In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

**System Settings**

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Bluetooth on | Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the **OK** button to change the option's status. |
| Set defaults | This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. Return to the factory default settings. |
| Master reset | Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings.<br>Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the previous menu. |
| Install on SYNC | Install applications or software updates you have downloaded.<br>Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully. |
| System info | Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number.<br>Press the **OK** button to select. |
| Voice settings | The voice settings submenu contains various options. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 333). |
| Browse USB | Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the **OK** button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu. |

## SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

A list of available applications appears. Each application may have its own specific settings.

Press the **MENU** button to enter the system menu.

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| SYNC-Apps | Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**. |

## SYNC Emergency Assistance

**WARNINGS**

For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.

Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the cell phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.

Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

**Note:** *Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

**Note:** *When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.*

**Note:** *Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

**Note:** *Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See* ***Supplementary Restraints System*** *(page 26).*

### Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

Press the **MENU** button then select:

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| SYNC-Apps | Press **OK**. |
| Emerg. assist | Press **OK**. Select the option you require and press **OK**. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog will appear in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

**Note:** *This feature only works in countries or regions where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

### In the Event of a Crash

**Note:** *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to make an emergency call.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to make an emergency call.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant function button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

**Note:** *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

**Note:** *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

**Note:** *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

**Note:** *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

### Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for the latest details.

### Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## SYNC AppLink

The system enables voice and manual control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and manual controls.

**Note:** *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

**Note:** *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

**Note:** *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

**Note:** *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.*

**Note:** *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

### To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Scroll through the list of available applications and press **OK** to select an app. Once an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button to access the app menu. You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down. Press the left arrow button to exit the app menu.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| SYNC-Apps | |
| Mobile Apps | Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**. |
| Find new Apps | Select this option if the app required is not listed. |

**Note:** *If a SYNC AppLink compatible app cannot be found, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

### To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

| Command | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| mobile (apps \| applications) | Say the name of the application after the tone. The application will start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app. |

The following voice commands are always available:

| Command | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| [main menu] help | Use this command to hear a list of available voice commands. |
| mobile (apps \| applications) | The system will prompt you to say the name of the app to start it. |
| list [mobile] (apps \| applications) | The system will list all of the currently available mobile apps. |
| find [new] [mobile] (apps \| applications) | The system will search your connected mobile device for SYNC compatible apps. |
| (quit \| exit \| close) | Use this command followed by the name of the app. |

You can also say the name of any SYNC compitable app to start it on SYNC. To see a list of the available voice commands for an app, say the name of an app followed by help. For example you could say "Spotify help".

### Enabling and Disabling Push Notifications

Some apps can send push notifications. A push notification is an alert from an app running in the background and is delivered by voice, pop up or both. This may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| SYNC-Apps | |
| Mobile Apps | |
| SYNC-Settings | |
| All Apps | If push notifications are supported, this setting will be listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required. |

### Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

To use the system you must consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates, using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

**Note:** *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

**Note:** *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

***App Status***

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu. There are three possible statuses:

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Update needed | The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required. |
| Up-to-date | No update is required. |
| Updating... | The system is trying to receive an update. |

Options in the settings menu:

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Request Update | If an update is required and you want to manually request the update, for example when you are in a Wi-Fi hotspot. |
| Disable Updates | Select this option to disable automatic updates. |

**App Permissions**

Permissions are divided by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app including, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel consumption, engine speed, battery voltage, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, ambient temperature, date and time.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information, including, but not limited to: MyKey, seatbelt status, engine speeds, braking events, brake pedal switch, acceleration, accelerator pedal position, clutch pedal switch, trip length, trip time, trip cost, percent engine on time, and percent of time at speed.

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state.

**Note:** *You will only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

**Note:** *We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.*

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist or albums.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, for example MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

**Note:** *NTFS file format is not supported.*

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

### Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

**Note:** *If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.*

#### To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted say:

| Voice Command | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| (USB [stick] \| iPod \| MP3 [player]) | You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands. |

Words in brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

#### To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **Media** button (next to the audio display) until an initializing message appears in the display.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Browse USB | Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the playback menu. |

Choose from the following:

| Message |
|---|
| Play all |
| Playlists |
| Songs |
| Artists |
| Albums |
| Genres |
| Browse USB |
| Reset USB |
| Exit |

## What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags of the current track, if populated.

## Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

| Voice Command | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| (USB [stick] \| iPod \| MP3 [player]) | You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. |

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; who plays this (what's | what is) playing, you must say; who plays this (what's or what is) playing.

**Then any of the following:**

| Voice Command | |
|---|---|
| play | |
| pause | |
| play all | |
| play [artist] | * |
| play [album] | * |
| play [genre] | * |
| [play] next track | |
| play [playlist] | * |
| [play] previous track | |
| play [song \| track \| title \| file] | * |
| Repeat Off | |
| repeat one [on] | |
| (browse \| search \| show) album | |
| (browse \| search \| show) artist | |
| (browse \| search \| show) genre | |
| (browse \| search \| show) playlist | |
| (browse \| search \| show) all (album \| albums) | |
| (browse \| search \| show) all (artist \| artists) | |
| (browse \| search \| show) all (genre \| genres) | |
| (browse \| search \| show) all (playlist \| playlists) | |
| (browse \| search \| show) all (song \| songs \| title \| titles \| file \| files \| track \| tracks) | |
| shuffle [all] [on] | |
| shuffle off | |

| Voice Command |
| --- |
| Similar Music |
| ((who's \| who is) this \| who plays this \| (what's \| what is) playing [now] \| (what \| which) (song \| track \| artist) is this \| (who's \| who is) playing \| (what's \| what is) this) |

* This voice command is not available until indexing is complete.

**Voice Command Guide**

| Voice Command | Description and Action |
| --- | --- |
| (browse \| search \| show) genre | The system searches all the data from your indexed music and if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. |
| [play] (similar music \| more like this) | The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information. |
| (browse \| search \| show) artist | The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port. |
| (browse \| search \| show) album | The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port. |

The system is also capable of playing music from your cell phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) or **Source** button, or press the voice button and when prompted say:

| Voice Command | Description and Action |
| --- | --- |
| Bluetooth Audio | |

Then any of the following:

| Voice Command | Description and Action |
| --- | --- |
| pause | |
| play | |
| [play] next track | |
| [play] previous track | |

## Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Options | This will enter the media menu. |

Then any of the following:

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Shuffle | Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off. |
| Repeat track | Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off. |
| Similar music | You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag. |
| Reset SYNC USB | Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library. |

## Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) to select USB playback.

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Browse USB | This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device. |

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Play all | Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.*<br>1. Press **OK** to select. The first track title appears in the display. |
| Playlists | Access your playlists from formats, ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP.*<br>1. Press **OK** to select.<br>2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press **OK**. |
| Songs | Search for and play a specific indexed track. *<br>1. Press **OK** to select.<br>2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press **OK**. |
| Artists | Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.*<br>1. Press **OK** to select.<br>2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press **OK**. |
| Albums | Sort all indexed media files by albums.*<br>1. Press **OK** to select.<br>2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press **OK**. |
| Genres | Sort indexed music by genre type.*<br>1. Press **OK** to select.<br>2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press **OK**. |

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| Browse USB | Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible.<br>1. Press **OK** to select.<br>2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press **OK**. |
| Reset USB | Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library. |

* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

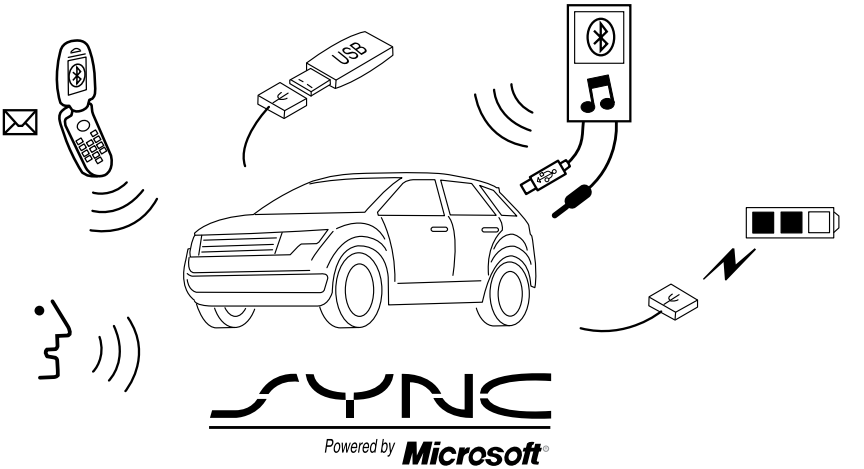
## Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player** (page 354).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## GENERAL INFORMATION




E142598

**Note:** *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

SYNC 2 uses Bluetooth wireless technology to pass information between your vehicle and your phone. You can use voice commands and other simple controls, such as steering wheel buttons, to make and receive calls or listen to text messages. Whatever your phone can do, SYNC lets you do so you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

Like a universal remote control, SYNC controls other systems besides your phone. SYNC connects you to:

- **Entertainment**, including AM/FM radio, DAB Radio (if equipped), or music on USB, SD Card, and other external devices
- **Navigation** assistance (if equipped), including maps
- **Information** such as traffic (if equipped), notification, calendar and more through SYNC Application and Services (if equipped)
- **Climate** controls
- **Settings**

SYNC is customized in each vehicle, so the design is different, but the basics are the same. In vehicles with SYNC 2, the 8-inch touchscreen in the center console lets you view information and adjust Phone, Entertainment, Navigation (if equipped), and Climate settings.

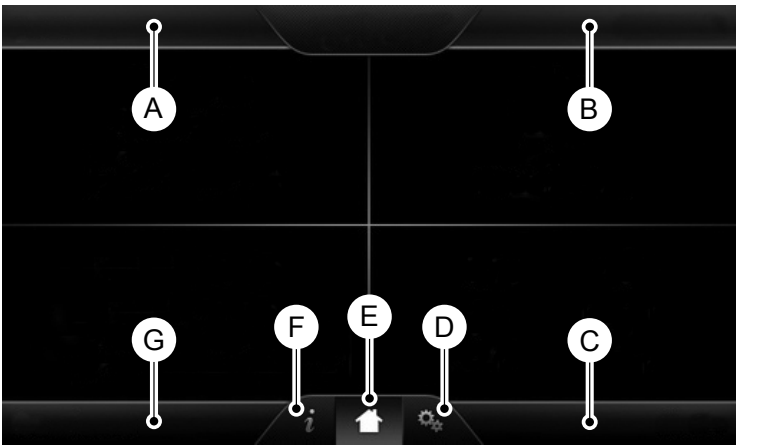
**Note:** *Make sure that you refer your device's user guide before using it with SYNC.*

**Note:** *Your SYNC system performs regular system maintenance in the background while you are not using the car.*

**WARNINGS**

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.




E161891



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Item | Message |
|---|---|
| A | Phone |
| B | Navigation |
| C | Climate |
| D | Settings |
| E | Home |
| F | Information |
| G | Entertainment |

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your mobile phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

**Note:** *Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.*

**Note:** *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

### PHONE

**Press to select any of the following:**

| Message |
|---|
| Phone |
| Speed dial |
| Phonebook |
| Call history |
| Messaging |
| Settings |

### NAVIGATION

**Press to select any of the following:**

| Message |
|---|
| My Home |
| Favorites |
| Previous Destinations |
| Place of interest |
| Emergency |
| Address |
| Junction |
| Town centre |
| Map |
| Edit Route |
| Cancel Route |

### CLIMATE

Press the corresponding icons to control the following options:

- Driver Settings.
- Recirculated Air.
- Auto.
- Dual.
- Passenger Settings.
- A/C.
- Defrost.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### SETTINGS



**Press to select any of the following:**

| Message |
|---|
| Clock |
| Display |
| Sound |
| Vehicle |
| Settings |
| Help |

### HOME



Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.

### INFORMATION



**Press to select any of the following:**

| Message |
|---|
| Traffic |
| Notifications |
| Calendar |
| Apps |
| Where Am I? |

### ENTERTAINMENT

**Press to select any of the following:**

| Message |
|---|
| AM |
| FM |
| DAB* |
| CD |
| USB |
| BT Stereo |
| SD Card |
| Line In |

* If equipped.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## Using the Audio Controls

**Depending on your vehicle, it may also have the following controls:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Power | Switch the media features on or off. |
| Vol | Adjust the volume of playing media. |
| Seek | Use as you normally would in media modes. |
| Tune | Use as you normally would in media modes. |
| Eject | Eject CD from the entertainment system. |
| Display | Press this button to switch the display screen off. Press again, or touch the screen to switch the display screen on. |
| Source | Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes. |
| Sound | Adjust the settings for: |
| | Bass |
| | Treble |
| | Midrange |
| | Set Balance and Fade |
| | DSP |
| | Speed Compensated Volume |

## Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use your steering wheel controls to interact with the touchscreen system.

- **VOL:** Control the volume of audio output.
- **Mute:** Mute the audio output.
- **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again and hold to end a voice session.

- **SEEK** and **PHONE ACCEPT:**
  - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
  - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between tracks or press and hold to fast seek.
  - While in phone mode, press to answer a call, or to switch between calls.
- **SEEK** and **PHONE REJECT:**
  - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
  - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between tracks or press and hold to fast seek.
  - While in phone mode, press to end a call, or to reject an incoming call.

See **Steering Wheel** (page 42).

## Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a dry, clean, soft cloth. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

## Support

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

## Safety Information

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 8 km/h.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

## Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

See the following chart for more specific examples.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Restricted Features | |
|---|---|
| Settings | Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active. |
| Text Messages | Composing text messages. |
| | Editing preset text messages. |
| Navigation | Demo navigation route. |

## Privacy Information

When a mobile phone connects to SYNC, the system creates a profile that links to that mobile phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This includes the history of calls when your mobile phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. Use the log profile and other system data to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The mobile phone profile, media player index and development log remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your mobile phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 68).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where we can access system data are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available.

## Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice command session.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### How to Use Voice Commands



The following are some of the voice commands that you can say at any time during a voice command session.

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| main menu |
| What Can I Say |
| Previous Page |
| Go back |
| Help |

***Helpful Hints***

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken voice commands.
- After pressing the voice command icon, wait until after the tone sounds and a message appears before saying a voice command. Any voice command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice command icon.

***Accessing a List of Available Voice Commands***

To access a list of available voice commands you can do either of the following.

**Using the touchscreen, press:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Settings |
| Help |
| Voice Command List |

**Using the steering wheel control, press the voice button and when prompted say one of the following:**

| Voice Commands |
|---|
| List of Commands |
| Radio List of Commands |
| Phone List of Commands |
| Voice Instructions List of Commands |

***Voice Command Settings***

These allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| Interaction Mode | Novice | In this mode the system provides detailed interaction and guidance. |
| | Advanced | This mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts. |
| Confirmation Prompts | The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice command. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm a voice command. | |
| Phone Candidate Lists | Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command. | |
| Media Candidate Lists | | |

**Using the touchscreen, press the settings icon, then press:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Voice settings |
| Voice Control |
| **Select from the following:** |
| Interaction Mode |
| Confirmation Prompts |
| Media Candidate Lists |
| Phone Candidate Lists |
| Voice Control Volume |

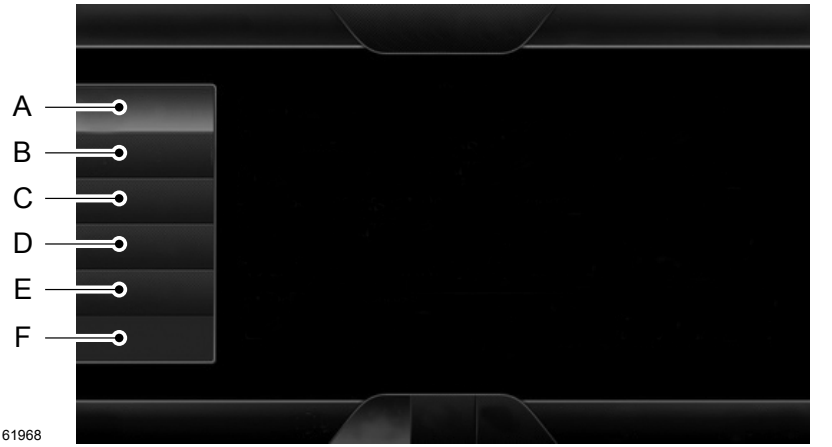
***Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options***

The voice command system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice command session. For example, this can be used when entering a street address or trying to call a contact from a mobile phone paired to the system.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## SETTINGS




| Item | Menu Item |
|---|---|
| A | Clock |
| B | Display |
| C | Sound |
| D | Vehicle |
| E | Settings |
| F | Help |

### Clock



Under this menu, you can set the clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Clock | Press the **+** or **-** to adjust the time.<br>From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones.<br>You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date. |

**Note:** *You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.*

**Note:** *If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.*

## Display



You can adjust the display using the touchscreen or the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. | |
| Display | | |
| **Then select from the following:** | | |
| Mode | Allows you to switch the display off. It also allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level.<br>If you also select: | |
| | Auto | These features will allow you to adjust the dimming of your screen. |
| | Night | |
| Edit Wallpaper | Allows you to display the default photo or upload your own. | |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| Auto Dim | When set to **On**, lets you use the automatic dimming feature. When set to **Off** you are able to adjust the brightness of the screen. | |
| | Brightness | Make the screen display brighter or dimmer. |
| Auto Dim Manual Offset | Allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night. | |



You can adjust the display settings using the touchscreen or the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

**To make adjustments using the voice button, press the button and when prompted, say:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| Display Settings |

### Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

**Note:** *You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.*

**Note:** *Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.*

The system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press the settings button.

**To upload your photos, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Display | |
| Edit Wallpaper | Follow the system prompts to upload your photographs. |

Only the photograph(s), which meets the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: JPG, GIF, PNG, BMP.
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

### Sound



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Settings |
| Sound |
| **Then select from the following:** |
| Bass |
| Midrange |
| Treble |
| Set Balance and Fade |
| DSP occupancy |
| Adaptive volume |

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all of these sound settings.*

### Vehicle



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Settings |
| Vehicle |
| **Then select from the following:** |
| Ambient light |
| Camera Settings |
| Enable Valet Mode |

**Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)**

When you switch this feature on, ambient lighting illuminates the footwells, media bin, door release handles, and the door map pockets with a choice of colors.

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Vehicle | |
| Ambient light | |

- You can then touch the desired color.
- Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.
- To switch the feature on or off, press the power button.

**Camera Settings**



This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Vehicle | |
| Camera Settings | |
| **Then select from the following:** | |
| Enhanced Park Pilot | |
| Rear Camera Delay | |

You can find more information on the rear view camera system in another chapter. See **Parking Aids** (page 144).



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Enable Valet Mode**



Valet mode allows you to lock the system.

No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

**Note:** *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, contact an authorized dealer.*

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Vehicle | |
| Enable Valet Mode | Then enter a four digit PIN twice, as prompted. |
| Continue | After you press Continue the system locks until you enter the PIN again. |

## Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

**System**



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| System | |
| **Then select from the following:** | |
| Language | Select to have the touchscreen display and voice controls in any of the selectable language options*. |
| Distance | Select to display units in kilometers or miles. |
| Temperature | Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit. |
| System Prompt Volume | Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system. |
| Touch Screen Button Beep | Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen. |
| Keyboard Layout | Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format. |

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Install Applications | Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses. |
| Master Reset | Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data. |

*Language options are region dependent. Some languages are only supported on screen, not via voice. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

**Voice Control**



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | |
| Voice Control | |
| **Then select from the following:** | |
| Interaction Mode | Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts. |
| Confirmation Prompts | Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request.<br>**Note:** Even with confirmation prompts turned off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings. |
| Media Candidate Lists | Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off. |
| Phone Candidate Lists | Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off. |
| Voice Control Volume | This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level. |

**Media Player**



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Media Player | |
| **Then select from the following:** | |
| Autoplay | When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source. |
| Bluetooth Devices | Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle. |
| Gracenote® Database Info | This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database. |
| Gracenote® Management | With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off. |
| Cover Art Priority | With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player. |

**Navigation**



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Navigation | |
| **Then select from the following:** | |
| Map Preferences | Switch breadcrumbs on and off. |
| | Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top. |

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| | Switch the Parking POI notification on and off. |
| Route Preferences | Select shortest route, fastest route or ecological route as your preferred route. This route displays first. |
| | Always use preferred route. If set to yes, the system only calculates a single route. This speeds up your destination entry process. |
| | Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated ecological route. This may incur a time penalty. |
| | Have the system avoid freeways. |
| | Have the system avoid toll roads. |
| | Have the system avoid ferries or car trains. |
| | Have the system avoid tunnels. |
| Navigation Preferences | Have the system use guidance prompts. |
| | Have the system automatically fill in Country information. |
| | Hazard Spot Warning<br>Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed. |
| Traffic Preferences | Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically. |
| | Switch traffic alert notifications on or off. |
| | Have the system display accident icons. |
| | Have the system display traffic jam icons. |
| | Have the system display closed roads. |
| | Have the system display road work icons. |
| | Have the system display incident icons. |
| | Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur. |
| | Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur. |
| | Have the system display any smog icons. |
| | Have the system display weather warning icons. |

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| | Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility. |
| | Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements. |
| Avoid Areas | Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes. |

**Phone**



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Phone | |
| **Then select from the following:** | |
| Bluetooth Devices | Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite. |
| Bluetooth | Switch Bluetooth on and off. |
| Do Not Disturb | Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle. |
| Emergency Assistance | Switch on or turn off the Emergency Assistance feature. See **Information** (page 401). |
| Phone Ringer | Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech or silent. |
| Text Message Notification | Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent. |

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Internet Data Connection | If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming, or query on connect. Press **?** for more information. |
| Manage Phonebook | Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook. |
| Roaming Warning | Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode. |

**Wireless and Internet**



Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or play games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking or if you park outside a wireless hotspot.

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. |
| Wireless and Internet | |
| **Then select from the following:** | |
| Wi-Fi Settings | Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode<br>Turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes. |
| | Choose a Wireless Network<br>Allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| | Gateway (Access Point) Mode<br>Makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when turned on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things, such as game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press **?** for more information. |
| | Gateway (Access Point) Settings<br>Allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway. |
| | Gateway (Access Point) Devices List<br>Allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system. |
| USB Mobile Broadband | Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following: |
| | Country |
| | Carrier |
| | Phone Number |
| | User Name |
| | Password |
| Bluetooth Settings | Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG. |
| Prioritize Connection Methods | Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to change order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015




E142626

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is the certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

**Help**



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| Settings | Press the settings icon. | |
| Help | Select Help | |
| **Then select from the following:** | | |
| System Information | Touchscreen system serial number | |
| | Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) | |
| | Touchscreen system software version | |
| | Navigation system version | |
| | Map database version | |
| | Gracenote® Database Information and Library version | |
| View Software Licenses | View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system. | |
| Driving Restrictions | Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving. | |
| Emergency Assistance | Switch on and off the Emergency Assistance feature. See **Information** (page 401). | |
| | In Case of Emergency (ICE) speed dial | Allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. |

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| | | The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process. |
| | Edit | Select to access your phone-book and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons. |
| Voice Command List | View categorized lists of voice commands. | |



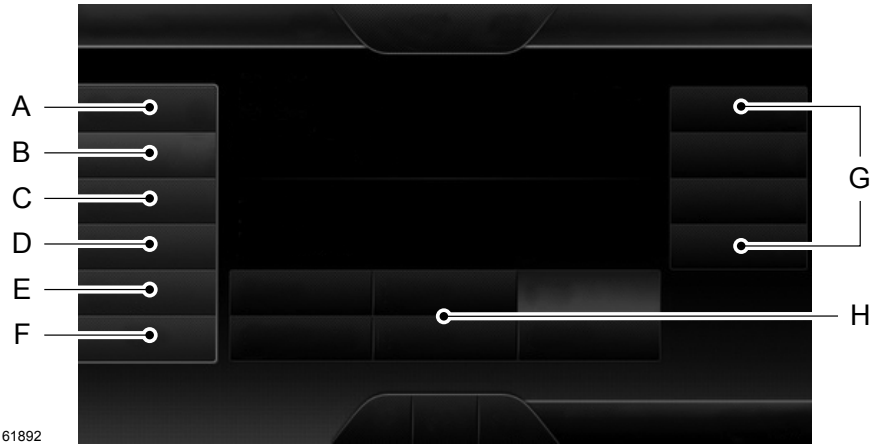
You can also access Help using the voice commands. The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| Help |

You can say help at any time to get assistance with commands, menus or other information.

## ENTERTAINMENT




| Message | Message and Description |
|---|---|
| A | AM |
| B | FM |
| C | DAB |
| D | CD |
| E | USB |
| F | Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card, BT Stereo and Line In. |

| Message | Message and Description |
|---|---|
| G | These buttons provide additional controls for the radio or media source. See the AM/FM radio controls table for more information. |
| H | Radio memory presets and CD controls. |

**Note:** *Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.*

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

### AM/FM/DAB Radio

The following controls are available for AM/FM/DAB radio



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Controls**

| Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| AM<br>FM<br>DAB | Touch either tab to listen to the radio. To change between AM, FM and DAB presets, just touch the **AM**, **FM** or **DAB** tab. | |
| Presets | Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. | |
| Scan | Touch this button to go to the next strong AM, FM or DAB radio station. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on. | |
| Information | (DAB only) | When the info button is pressed, the system shows the corresponding block number for the active DAB radio station. If you press the info button a second time the radio station name is displayed again. |
| Tune | For AM and FM only, touch this button to manually enter the desired station number. Touch **Enter** when you are done. | |
| TA | Turn on to receive traffic announcements. | |
| Browse | See a list of all currently available radio stations. | |

**Options**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Sound Settings | Touch this button to adjust settings for: |
| | Bass |
| | Midrange |
| | Treble |
| | Set Balance and Fade |
| | DSP occupancy |
| | Adaptive volume |
| Radio Text | This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations. |

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| AST | AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location. |
| News announcement | With news announcement option active, the system interrupts active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other media active) supports news. |
| Regional | With Regional option active, the system stays on the regional subprogram instead of switching to a different frequency with better reception. |
| Alternate Frequency | With alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station. |
| Service Linking | With Service Linking active, the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable. |

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

**Radio Voice Commands**



**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command | |
|---|---|
| Radio | |
| **Then you can say a command similar to the following:** | |
| FM | Say a frequency or preset. |
| DAB | Say a preset. |
| Off | |
| help | |

## CD



**To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| CD |

**Insert your CD then select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Repeat | Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or switch the feature off if already on. |
| Shuffle | Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or switch the feature off if already on. |
| Scan | Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks. |
| More Info | Touch this button to see disc information. |
| Browse | Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks. |

**To adjust the Sound Settings, select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Options |
| Sound Settings |
| **Then any of the following:** |
| Bass |
| Midrange |
| Treble |
| Set Balance and Fade |
| DSP occupancy |
| Adaptive volume |

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

### CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

**If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| CD |

**When listening to a CD you can say many commands. Following are a few examples of what you can say.**

| Voice command |
|---|
| play |
| pause |
| Next Track |
| Previous Track |
| Help |

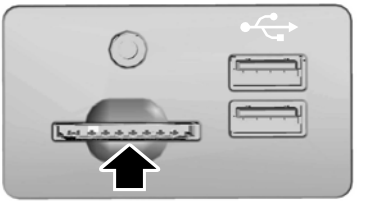
## SD Card Slot and USB Port

The SD card slot and USB port are located in the Media Hub. See **Navigation** (page 408).

### SD Card

**Note:** *Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.*

**Note:** *The navigation system also uses this card slot. See **Navigation** (page 408).*



E175710

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



E142620

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

### USB Port



E175711

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

### Playing Music from Your Device

**Note:** *The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.*



**Insert your device and select:**

| Message | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| USB<br>SD Card | Once the system recognizes your USB or SD card you can then select from the following options: |
| Repeat | This feature replays the currently playing song or album. |
| Shuffle | Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order. |
| Similar Music | This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing. |
| More Info | Touch this button to see disc information, for example current track, artist name, album and genre. |
| Options | Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings. |

***Sound***

**Sound settings allows you to adjust settings for:**

| Message | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Bass | |
| Midrange | |
| Treble | |
| Set Balance and Fade | |
| DSP | |
| Adaptive volume | |
| Media Player Settings | Allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See **Settings** (page 370). |

| Message | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Device Information | Displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device. |
| Update Media Index | Indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (for example adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device. |

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

***Browse***

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, for example genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information, for example Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

**You can also select:**

| Message | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| What's Playing? | To hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request. |

**USB and SD Card Voice Commands**



**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command | |
|---|---|
| SD Card | |
| USB | |
| **Then commands such as the following:** | |
| Browse | |
| Next Track | |
| pause | |
| play | Say the name of what you would like to listen to such as a band, song, album or playlist. |

| Voice command |
|---|
| Play Artist ___ * |
| Play Song ___ * |
| Similar Music |
| Help |

* ___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles" or "Play song Penny Lane".

## Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

## Bluetooth Audio

The system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.



**To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:**

| Message |
|---|
| BT audio |

### Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



The voice system allows you to control your media with a simple voice command. For example to change songs, press the voice button and follow the system prompts.

## Line In

**WARNINGS**

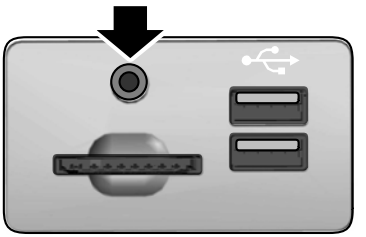
Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend

**WARNINGS**

against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



E191800

Your auxiliary input jack allows you to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. The jack is located in the center console.

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **Line In**.

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed for use with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at both ends.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position Park (P).
2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adapter in one of the jack inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD (if there is a CD already loaded into the system).
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to half of the maximum.
6. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Then select:

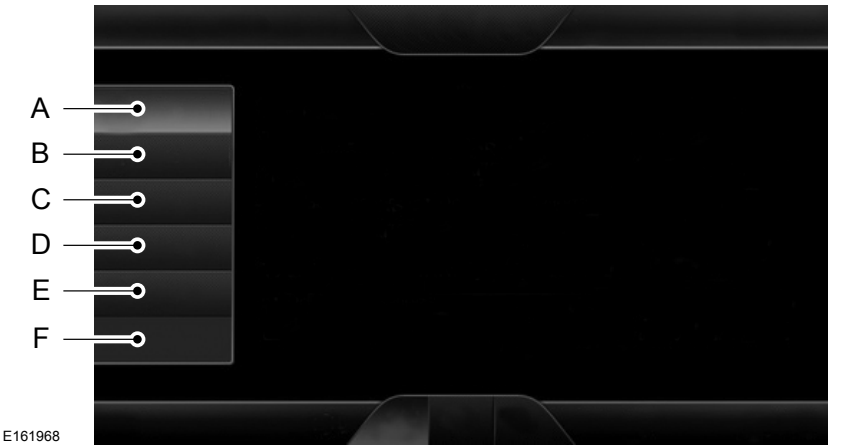
| Menu Item | |
|---|---|
| Line In | You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low. |

| Menu Item | |
|---|---|
| | Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station by switching back and forth between the controls. |

**Troubleshooting**

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The jack only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.
- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problem persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable media player.
- Control the portable media player in the same manner when used with headphones, as the auxiliary input jack does not provide control (such as Play or Pause) over the attached portable media player.

## PHONE




| Item | Menu Item |
|---|---|
| A | Phone |
| B | Speed dial |
| C | Phonebook |

| Item | Menu Item |
|---|---|
| D | Call History |
| E | Messaging |
| F | Settings |

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual or the local Ford website.

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your cell phone in a hands-free manner.

**Touch the upper left corner of the touchscreen:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Pair phone | |
| Find SYNC | Follow the on-screen instructions.<br>Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary.<br>1. Select **SYNC** and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.<br>2. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| | 3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone.<br>4. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.<br>5. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website. |

## Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

**To pair a subsequent cell phone, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Phone | |
| Settings | |
| Bluetooth Devices | |
| Add Device | |
| Find SYNC | Follow the on-screen instructions.<br>Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary.<br>1. Select **SYNC** and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.<br>2. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.<br>3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone.<br>4. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.<br>5. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website. |

## Making Calls



**Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| Call |
| Dial |

You can say the name of a person from your phone book to call or a say a number to dial. For example "Call Jenny" or "Dial 867-5309".



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold the phone button.

## Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.



**To accept the call, select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Accept |

**Note:** *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*



**To reject the call, select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Reject |

**Note:** *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

## Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on the touchscreen to select from the following options:

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Phone | Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose any of these options: |
| | Mute Call |
| | Hold Call |
| | Hands-free off |
| | Join Calls |
| | End |
| Speed dial | Select to call stored contacts. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Phone-book | Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phonebook. The system places the entries in alpha-betical categories summar-ized at the top of the screen |
| | To turn on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, select: |
| | Phone |
| | Settings |
| | Manage Phonebook |
| | Display Photos from Phone-book |
| | Certain smart phones may support transferring street addresses when listed with phonebook contact informa-tion. If your cell phone supports this feature, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and save them as favorites. |
| Call History | **Note:** This is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.<br>After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to: |
| | Favorites: Quick Dial |
| Messaging | Send text messages using the touchscreen. See **Text Messaging** later in this section. |
| Settings | Touch this button to access various phone settings, for example turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See **Phone Settings** later in this section |

## Text Messaging

**WARNING**

Local laws may prohibit some or all of the text messaging functions while driving. Check your local road rules before using these functions.

**Note:** *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

**Note:** *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 8 km/h.*

**Note:** *SYNC does not download read text messages from your cell phone.*

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, for example LOL.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Touch the top left corner of the display, then select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Phone |
| Messaging |
| **Then any of the following:** |
| Listen (speaker icon) |
| Dial |
| Send Text |

| Menu Item |
|---|
| View |
| Delete |
| Delete All |

### Composing a Text Message

**Note:** *This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 8 km/h.*

**Note:** *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

**To compose and send a text message, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Phone | |
| Messaging | |
| Send Text | Enter a cell phone number or choose from your phonebook. |
| Edit Text | Allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own. |
| Send | Sends the message as it is. |

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list, and send it to a connected device, for example a USB drive.

### Text Message Options

| Messages |
|---|
| I'll call you back in a few minutes. |
| I just left, I'll be there soon. |
| Can you give me a call? |
| I'm on my way. |
| I'm running a few minutes late. |

| Messages |
|---|
| I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early. |
| I'm outside. |
| I'll call you when I get there. |
| OK |
| Yes |
| No |
| Thanks |

| Messages |
| --- |
| Stuck in traffic. |
| Call me later. |

| Messages |
| --- |
| LOL |

**Receiving a Text Message**

**When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
| --- | --- |
| View | To view the text message. |
| Listen | For SYNC to read the message to you. |
| Dial | To call the contact. |
| Ignore | To exit the screen. |

## Phone Settings

**To enter the phone settings menu select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
| --- | --- |
| Phone | |
| Settings | |
| **Then any of the following:** | |
| Bluetooth Devices | Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite. |
| Bluetooth | To turn Bluetooth off or on. |
| Do Not Disturb | If you want all calls to go directly to your voicemail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either. |
| Emergency Assistance | Switch the Emergency Assistance feature on or off. See **Information** (page 401). |
| Phone Ringer | Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired cell phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Text Message Notification | Select a text message notification, if supported by your cell phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent. |
| Internet Data Connection | If your cell phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press **?** for more information. |
| Manage Phonebook | To access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your cell phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook. |
| Roaming Warning | To have the system alert you when your cell phone is in roaming mode. |

## Phone Voice Commands



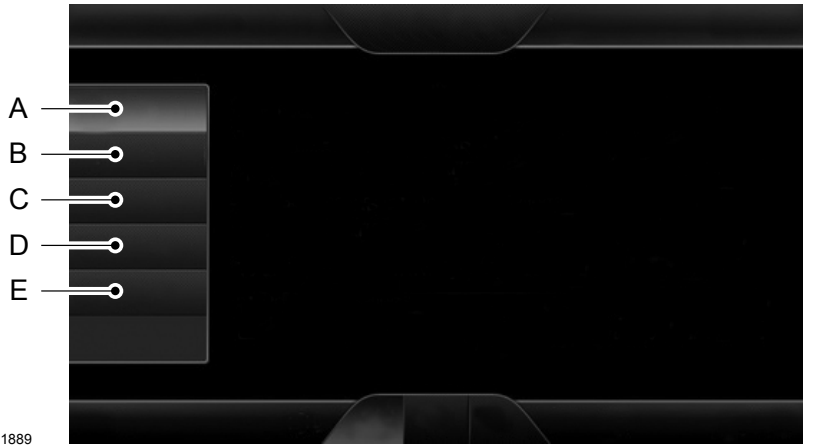
**Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following or a similar command:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| Call Voicemail |
| Listen to Message |
| Reply to Message |
| Pair Phone |
| Help |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## INFORMATION




| Item | Menu Item |
|---|---|
| A | Traffic |
| B | Notifications |
| C | Calendar |
| D | Apps |
| E | Where Am I? |

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

## Notifications

**Press Notifications, and then choose from any of the following services:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| View | The complete message |
| Delete | The message |
| Delete All | Messages |

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

**Note:** *The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.*

## Calendar

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

## Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

**WARNINGS**

For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth capable and compatible with the system.

Always place your mobile phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working correctly.

Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is set to on prior to a collision, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

**Note:** *Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

**Note:** *When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the setting applies to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.*

**Note:** *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

**Note:** *Ford is not the provider of the emergency services contacted by SYNC when an emergency call is initiated. Ford does not accept any liability in relation to the provision, quality or timeliness of those services.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing the emergency assistance number through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

**Note:** *In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 26). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 185). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

### Setting Emergency Assistance On

From the information menu you can select **Apps** and go to the Emergency Assistance settings by pressing on **Emergency Assist** . In the upcoming menu you can switch the feature **On** or **Off** .

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Apps |
| Emergency Assistance |
| On |

If you switch off this feature, the dialog allows you to set a reminder.

Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

**Note:** *This feature only works in countries or regions where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

### In the Event of a Crash

**Note:** *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial the local emergency services.*

Before making a call:

- The system provides a short time window (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial the local emergency assistance service.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.
- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.

During a call:

- An introductory message plays for the emergency operator.
- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

**Note:** *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

**Note:** *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

**Note:** *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

**Note:** *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Emergency Assistance may not work if:**

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

**Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature**

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in some countries.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

**Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice**

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

**Where Am I?**

**For vehicle location and information select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Information | |
| Help | |
| **Then select:** | |
| Where Am I? | View your vehicle's current location.<br>If your vehicle is equipped with navigation this screen will show your location coordinates and give your location information like the current street address.<br>If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you will only see the location coordinates. |

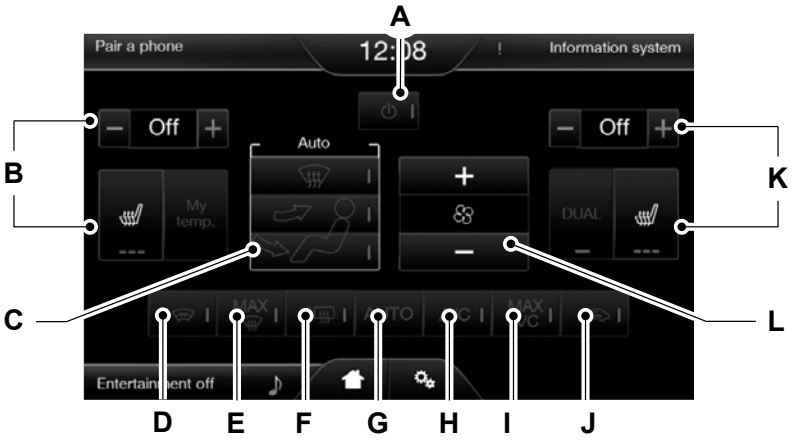


Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## CLIMATE

Press the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from this screen.

**Note:** *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Settings*** *(page 370).*




E206105

A **Power:** Touch to switch the system off and on. Outside air cannot enter your vehicle when you switch off the system.

B **Passenger settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.

Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on.

Touch **MyTemp** to select your preset temperature setpoint. Touch and hold **MyTemp** to save a new preset temperature setpoint.

C **Manual airflow distribution controls:**

**Floor and Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents and floor vents.

**Panel:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.

**Panel and Floor:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents.

**Floor:** Distributes air through the demister vents and floor vents.

**Defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

D **Heated windscreen:** Press the button to clear the windscreen of thin ice and fog.

E **MAX Defrost:** Touch to switch on maximum defrosting. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, fan adjusts to the highest speed and temperature is set to the full heat position. You can also use this setting to defog or clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select MAX Defrost.

F **Heated rear window:** Turns the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).

G **AUTO:** Touch to switch on automatic operation. Then set the temperature using the temperature control. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also turn off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

H **A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

I **MAX A/C:** Touch for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.

J **Recirculated air:** Touch to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odours from entering your vehicle.

K **Driver settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.

**DUAL:** Touch to switch on independent driver and passenger temperature control.

Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on.

L **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to adjust fan speed.

**Note:** ***MAX Defrost*** *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when defrost is on.*

## Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following or a similar command:



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Voice commands | |
|---|---|
| climate (automatic \| auto) [on] | |
| Climate Off | |
| Climate Set Temperature ___ | Adjust the temperature to between 15ºC - 30ºC |

## NAVIGATION (If Equipped)

**Note:** *The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, contact an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Handle the SD card with care to avoid contamination or damage. Never touch the metal contacts. Do not clean the SD card with anything other than a soft cloth. Never attempt to use an SD card that has been cracked, deformed or repaired using adhesive, as doing to may damage the equipment. Do not put on any sticker or write anything on the SD card. Do not attempt to alter the data contained on the SD card in any way.*

**Note:** *The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.*

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

### Destination Mode

**To set a destination press the green corner of your touchscreen, then press:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Dest. |
| **Choose any of the following:** |
| My Home |
| Favourites |
| Previous Destinations |
| Place of interest |
| Emergency |
| Address |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Junction |
| Town centre |
| Map* |
| Edit Route |
| Cancel Route |

*- For some vehicles it may display "Latitude/Longitude".

To set your destination, enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order).

**For an address destination entry, press:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Go | Pressing this button makes the address location appear on the map. |

**To choose a previous destination, press:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Previous Destinations | The last 20 destinations you have selected appear. |

**Once you have chosen your destination press:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Destination | This will start the route calculation and guidance. |
| Avoid Areas | Your pre-set selections are considered when your route is calculated. For more information on these selections, see **Setting Your Navigation Preferences** later in this chapter. |

## Michelin Travel Guide (If Equipped)

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interests (POI) such as restaurants, hotels and touristic sites (if available).

If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected POI.

**Note:** *Not all features are available in all languages and countries.*

## Places of Interest (POI) Categories

| Main categories |
|---|
| Fuel Station |
| Parking |
| Food, Drink and Dining |
| Automotive |
| Travel and Transportation |
| Shopping |
| Financial |
| Entertainment & Arts |
| Emergency |
| Recreation & Sports |
| Community |
| Government |
| Health & Medicine |
| Domestic Services |

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically or by distance.

## Setting Your Navigation Preferences



Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

**To access the settings options, press:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Settings |
| Navigation |
| **Then select any of the following:** |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Map Preferences**

| Menu Item | Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions | |
|---|---|---|
| Map Preferences | | |
| **Then select any of the following:** | | |
| Breadcrumbs | Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. You can switch this feature: | |
| | On | Off |
| Turn List Format | Have the system display your turn list: | |
| | Top to Bottom | Bottom to Top |
| Parking POI Notification | When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest are displayed. Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. You can switch this feature: | |
| | On | Off |

**Route Preferences**

| Menu Item | Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Route Preferences | | | |
| **Then select any of the following:** | | | |
| Preferred Route | Choose to have the system display your chosen route type. | | |
| | Shortest | Fastest | Eco |
| Always use Preferred Route | Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination. | | |
| Eco Time Penalty | Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route. | | |
| Avoid | When activated, you can choose to have the system avoid motorways, toll roads, ferries, car trains and tunnels when planning your route. | | |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**Navigation Preferences**

| Menu Item | Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions | |
|---|---|---|
| Navigation Preferences | | |
| **Then select any of the following:** | | |
| Guidance Prompts | Select the type of prompts the system uses. | |
| Auto-fill country | Have the system automatically fill in the country based on the information already entered into the system. You can switch this feature: | |
| | On | Off |
| Hazard Spot Warning | Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed. | |

**Traffic Preferences**

| Menu Item | Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions | |
|---|---|---|
| Traffic Preferences | | |
| **Then select any of the following:** | | |
| Avoid Traffic Problems | You can choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route. | |
| | Automatic | Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification |
| | Manual | Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation. |
| Traffic alert notification | Turn the traffic alert notifications on or off. | |
| Traffic Preferences | You can choose to turn on any of the following Traffic alert categories. | |
| | Have the system display accident information. | |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Menu Item | Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions |
|---|---|
| | Have the system display traffic jam information. |
| | Have the system display closed roads. |
| | Have the system display road work information. |
| | Have the system display incident information. |
| | Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur. |
| | Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur. |
| | Have the system display any smog information. |
| | Have the system display weather warning information. |
| | Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility. |
| | Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements. |

**Avoid Area**

| Menu Item | Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions |
|---|---|
| Avoid Areas | Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you. |
| **Then select any of the following:** | |
| Add | Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To program an entry, press: |
| Delete | To delete a section choose the listing on the screen. The screen will change, then press: |

## Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.



Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes:



**Heading up (2D map)** This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 5 km/h.




**North up (2D map)** always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



**3D map mode** provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

**You can also select the following options:**

| Menu Items | |
|---|---|
| View | Switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance. |
| Menu | Displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings. |



Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

### Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch the feature off, just press the **+** or **-** button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

**Map Icons**



**Vehicle mark** shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



**Scroll cursor** allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



**Address book entry default icon(s)** indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.



**Home** indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



**POI (Point Of Interest) icons** indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.




**Starting point** indicates the starting point of a planned route.



**Waypoint** indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.



**Destination symbol** indicates the ending point of a planned route.



**Next maneuver point** indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.




**No GPS symbol** indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

## Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

| Menu Item | Action and Description | |
|---|---|---|
| Set as Dest | Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch this button. | |
| Set as Waypoint | Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint. | |
| Save to Favorites | Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites. | |
| POI Icons | Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. You can switch these features: | |
| | On | Off |
| Cancel Route | Touch this button to cancel the active route. | |
| Traffic List | Touch this button to show a list of traffic incidents. | |

**View/Edit Route**

**Access these features when a route is active:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| View Route |
| Edit Destination/Waypoints |
| Edit Turn List |
| Detour |
| Edit Route Preferences |
| Edit Traffic Preferences |
| Cancel Route |

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

## Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

**After the tone, say any of the following or a similar command:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| Destination |
| Zoom out |
| Zoom in |
| Where Am I |
| help |

**The following commands can only be used when a navigation route is active:**

| Voice command |
|---|
| Reroute |
| Cancel Route |
| Show whole route |
| Repeat last instruction |
| Show route summary |

### One-shot Destination Street Address

**To set a destination with voice commands, you can say:**

| Voice Command | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Find an Address | The system asks you to say the full address and displays an example on-screen. |

You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Any town".

### Traffic Information

Traffic information is provided through an arrangement with Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd. For license terms and conditions refer to the Appendices. Traffic information is based on data provided with the permission of one or more third parties. Please note: Should Ford's arrangement with Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd cease for any reason, the ongoing provision of traffic information cannot be guaranteed.

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

To check your mobile phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

| Mobile phone issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| A lot of background noise during a phone call. | The audio control settings on your mobile phone may be affecting SYNC performance. | Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments. |
| During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me. | Possible mobile phone malfunction. | Try switching off your mobile phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. |
| | | Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off. |
| SYNC is not able to download my phonebook. | This is a mobile phone-dependent feature. | Check your mobile phone's compatibility. |
| | Possible mobile phone malfunction. | Try switching off your mobile phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. |
| | | Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add. |
| | | You must switch on your mobile phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC. |
| The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts. | Limitations on your mobile phone's capability. | Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add. |
| | | If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your mobile phone's memory. |
| | | Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact. |
| | | You must switch on your mobile phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Mobile phone issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| I am having trouble connecting my mobile phone to SYNC. | This is a mobile phone-dependent feature. | Check your mobile phone's compatibility. |
| | Possible mobile phone malfunction. | Try switching off your mobile phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. |
| | | Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again. |
| | | Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your mobile phone. |
| | | Update your mobile phone's firmware. |
| | | Switch off the auto download setting. |
| Text messaging is not working on SYNC. | This is a mobile phone-dependent feature. | Check your mobile phone's compatibility. |
| | Possible mobile phone malfunction. | Try switching off your mobile phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. |
| | iPhone | • Go to your mobile phone's Settings.<br>• Go to the Bluetooth Menu.<br>• Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected.<br>• Press the blue circle to enter the next menu.<br>• Turn on Show Notifications.<br>• Turn on Sync Contacts.<br><br>Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC.<br>Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to.<br>Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked.<br>Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. |

| Mobile phone issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| | | Text messages from third party applications are not supported. |
| Audible text messages do not work on my mobile phone. | This is a mobile phone-dependent feature. | Your mobile phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages. |
| | | Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your mobile phone supports the feature. Press the **PHONE** button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press **OK**. |
| | This is a mobile phone limitation. | Because each mobile phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific mobile phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between mobile phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version. |

| USB and media issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| I am having trouble connecting my device. | Possible device malfunction. | Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again. |
| | | Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. |
| | | Make sure you correctly insert the USB cable into the device and the vehicle USB port. |
| | | Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. |
| SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle. | This is a device limitation. | Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| USB and media issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| Bluetooth audio does not stream. | This is a device-dependent feature. | Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device. |
| | The device is not connected. | |
| SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device. | Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information. | Make sure that all song details are populated. |
| | The file may be corrupted. | Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version. |
| | The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play. | Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class. |
| When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound. | This is a device limitation. | From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen. |
| | | To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC. |
| | | To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector. |

| Voice command issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| SYNC does not understand what I am saying. | You may be using the wrong voice commands. | Review the mobile phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections. |
| | | Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there. |
| | You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time. | Start speaking when the second SYNC tone sounds and the system is ready for voice input. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Voice command issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| | You may not be speaking into the microphone | Make sure you speak into the microphone. It is located in the headliner just above the windshield. |
| SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist. | You may be using the wrong voice commands. | Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section. |
| | You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it. | Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. |
| | | Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles". |
| | | If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A". |
| | The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it. | Try to avoid using special characters as the system does not recognize them. |
| SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call. | You may be using the wrong voice commands. | Review the mobile phone voice commands at the beginning of the mobile phone section. |
| | | You can also use the mobile phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 333). |
| | You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it. | Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson". |
| | | The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe". |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| Voice command issues | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| | Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters. | Try to avoid using special characters as the system does not recognize them. |
| | Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters. | If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E". |
| The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my mobile phone. | You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC. | SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your mobile phone. |
| | | **Helpful Hint:** You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting. |
| The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive. | You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC. | SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists. |
| The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language. | SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology. | SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice. |
| | | SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example," play artist Madonna"). |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

| General | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Issue** | **Possible cause** | **Possible solution** |
| The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts). | SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display. | SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language. |
| | | SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna"). |

| SYNC with Touchscreen System Reset |
|---|
| The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of your Sync unit is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow a 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC system. |



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

**WARNINGS**

Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

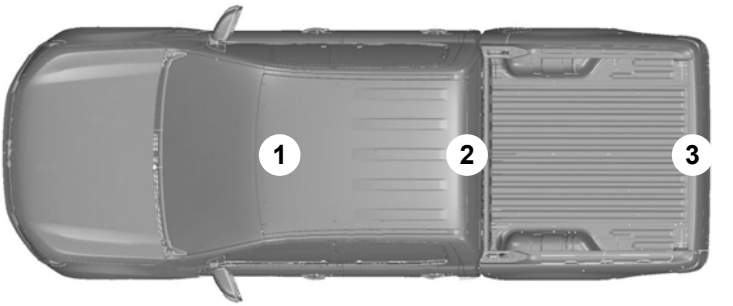
**WARNINGS**

The RF (radio frequency) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 centimetres (4 inches) from any electronic modules and airbags.




E205691

| Frequency Band MHz | Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS) | Antenna Positions |
|---|---|---|
| 1 - 30 | 100 W | 3 |
| 50 - 54 | 100 W | 2 |
| 68 – 87.5 | 50 W | 2 |
| 142 – 176 | 50 W | 2 |

| Frequency Band MHz | Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS) | Antenna Positions |
|---|---|---|
| 220 - 225 | 50 W | 2 |
| 380 – 512 | 50 W | 2 |
| 806 – 870 | 10 W | 2 |
| 1200 – 1400 | 10 W | 2 |
| 1710 – 1885 | 10 W | 2 |
| 1885 – 2025 | 10 W | 2 |

**Note:** *After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition **ON**
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### SYNC™ End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by FORD MOTOR COMPANY from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS") . Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.T
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

**Description of Other Rights and Limitations**

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:** If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:** All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THRID PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. $250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

## End User Notice

### *Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information*

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

**WARNING**

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

### *General Operation*

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

**Use of Speech Recognition Functions:**
Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

## TYPE APPROVALS

### RF Certification Logos

Brazil




E207816

Argentina




E207817

Abu Dhabi, Dubai

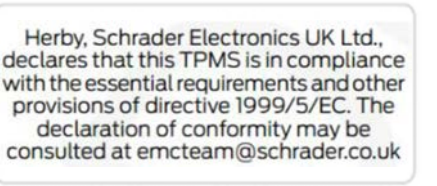



E197509




E202555

Brazil

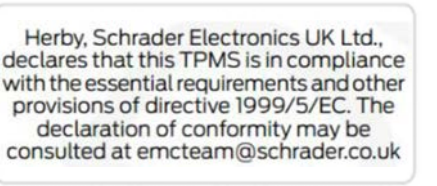



E207818

European Union EU




E212162




E207818

Jordan

Kingdom of Jordon Type approval for tyre pressure sensor.
Model: AG2SZ4
Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics
Type Approval Number: TRC/LPD/2014/56

E207819

RAQP/33A/0514/S/(14-0847)

E207820

Malaysia

1024

E197811

Moldova

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

E207821

Morocco

NTC

Type Approved

No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

Philippines

И 011 14

E197844

Serbia

Complies with
IDA Standards
DA 00461

E207822

Singapore

ICASA

TA-2014/064

Approved

E198002

South Africa

CCAM14LP0460T0

E203899

CCAM14LP0090T3

E203679

Taiwan

0028

Schrader Electronics цім стверджує, що
обладнання Радіопередавач моделі AG2SZ4
системи контролю тиску в шині
автомобіла відповідає вимогам Технічного
регламенту радіообладнання і
телекомунікаційного кінцевого
(термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ
№ 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація
відповідності знаходиться на сайті Schrader
Electronics та надається за запитом на електрону адресу doc.request@schrader.co.uk

E198009

## Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## iPod

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

## SD Card

SD TM

SDHC TM

SD Logo is a trademark.

# 4

4WD
See: Four-Wheel Drive....128

# A

A/C
See: Climate Control....90
About This Manual....7
ABS
See: Brakes....134
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....134
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....10
ACC
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control....151
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....42
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....90
Air Vents....90
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....40
Ambient Lighting....54
Anti-Theft Alarm....40
Alarm System....40
Arming the Alarm....41
Disarming the Alarm....41
Full and Reduced Guard....41
Triggering the Alarm....41
Appendices....425
At a Glance....11
Front Exterior Overview....11
Instrument Panel Overview....13
Rear Exterior Overview....15
Vehicle Interior Overview....12
Audible Warnings and Indicators....66
Door Ajar....66
Front and Rear Park Aid....67
Headlamps On....66
Key in Ignition....66
Lane Departure Warning....67
Parking Brake On....66
Seatbelt Reminder....66
Audio Control....42
Audio Input Jack....329
Audio System....306
General Information....306
Audio Troubleshooting....331
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays....324
Changing the Time....324
Exact Hour Adjustment....325
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Navigation System....315
Alternative Frequencies....320
Automatic Volume Control....319
Autostore Control....319
News Broadcasts....320
On, Off Control....318
Regional Mode....320
Station Preset Buttons....318
Station Tuning Control....318
Traffic Information Control....319
Waveband Button....318
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC....310
Alternative Frequencies....314
Automatic Volume Control....314
Autostore Control....313
Digital Signal Processing (DSP)....314
News Broadcasts....314
On, Off Control....312
Regional Mode....315
Sound Button....312
Station Preset Buttons....313
Station Tuning Control....312
Traffic Information Control....313
Waveband Button....312
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD....307
AM/FM....308
Autostore Control....309
On, Off Control....308
Station Preset Buttons....309
Station Tuning Control....309
Autolamps....50
Automatic Climate Control....93
Type 1....93
Type 2....95




Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Automatic Transmission....124
Emergency Park Position Release Lever....127
Hints on driving with an automatic transmission....126
Selector lever positions....124
Sport Mode and Manual Shifting....125
Auto-Start-Stop....116
Limitations of Use....116
Switching the System On and Off....117
Using Auto-Start-Stop Manual Transmission....116
Autowipers....45
Type 1....45
Type 2....46
Auxiliary Power Points....107
12 Volt DC Power Point....107
AC Power Point....107
Locations....107

# B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....255
Battery Charging
See: Charging the 12V Battery....254
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....244
Booster Seats....18
Booster cushion (Group 3)....18
Booster seat (Group 2)....18
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check....253
Brakes....134
General Information....134
Breaking-In....182
Brakes and Clutch....182
Engine....182
Tires....182
Bulb Specification Chart....262
Bulb Specification Chart - Short Wheelbase, Chassis Cab....263

# C

Cabin Air Filter....99
Capacities and Specifications....303
Cargo Lamps....54
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....265
Catalytic Converter....120
Driving with a Catalytic Converter....120
Center Console....110
Changing a Bulb....256
Approach Lamp and Side Direction Indicator....258
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp....260
Front Fog Lamps....258
Lamp Assembly Condensation....256
License Plate Lamp....260
Rear Lamps....259
Replacing the Headlamp Bulbs....256
Side Repeater....258
Changing a Fuse....242
Changing a Road Wheel....276
Installing a Road Wheel....283
Jacking and Lifting Points....280
Jacking and Lifting Points - Chassis Cab....281
Lug Nuts....276
Removing a Road Wheel....282
Spare Wheel....278
Spare Wheel - Chassis Cab....279
Stowing the Flat Tire....283
Vehicle Jack....276
Vehicles with a Spare Wheel....276
Changing the 12V Battery....255
Auxiliary Battery....255
Main Battery....255
Changing the Wiper Blades....256
Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades....256
Charging the 12V Battery....254
Battery Management System....254
Checking MyKey System Status....35
Checking the Wiper Blades....255
Child Restraint Positioning....19
Attaching a child restraint with a top tether....21
ISOFIX Anchor Points....20
Child Safety....17
Child Seats....17
Child restraints for different mass groups....17



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Cleaning the Exterior....265
Body paintwork preservation....266
Cleaning the alloy wheels....265
Cleaning the chrome trim....265
Cleaning the headlamps....265
Cleaning the rear window....265
Cleaning the Interior....266
Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens....266
Rear windows....266
Safety belts....266
Clearing All MyKeys....33
Climate....406
Climate Control Voice Commands....407
Climate Control....90
Principle of Operation....90
Clock....76
Cold Weather Precautions....182
Compact Disc Player....325
CD Text Display Options....328
Compact Disc Playback....325
Compact Disc Track Scanning....326
Ending Compact Disc Playback....328
Fast Forward and Reverse....325
MP3 Display Options....328
MP3 File Playback....326
Repeat Compact Disc Tracks....325
Shuffle and Random....325
Track Selection....325
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....252
Creating a MyKey....33
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings....33
Cruise Control....43
Principle of Operation....150
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....150
Cup Holders....109

# D

Data Recording....9
Daytime Running Lamps....51
Diesel Particulate Filter....114
Regeneration....114
Direction Indicators....53
Disabling the Passenger Airbag....26
Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch....26
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off....27
Switching the Passenger Airbag On....27
DPF
See: Diesel Particulate Filter....114
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap....254
Driver Alert....157
Principle of Operation....157
Using Driver Alert....158
Driver and Passenger Airbags....27
Driver Knee Airbag....28
Driving Aids....157
Driving Hints....182
Driving Through Water....183
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....51

# E

Electromagnetic Compatibility....425
Electronic Locking Differential....133
End User License Agreement....426
SYNC™ End User License Agreement (EULA)....426
Engine Coolant Check....252
Adding Engine Coolant....252
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....40
Engine Oil Check....251
Adding Oil....251
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel/3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel....251
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L Duratec-HE (122kW/165PS) - MI4....251
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (110kW/150PS) - Puma....289
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (118kW/160PS) - Puma....290
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (88kW/120PS) - Puma....286



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (92kW/125PS) - Puma....287
Engine Specifications - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (96kW/130PS) - Puma....288
Engine Specifications - 2.5L Duratec-HE (122kW/165PS) - MI4....285
Engine Specifications - 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel....291
Entertainment....384
AM/FM/DAB Radio....384
Bluetooth Audio....391
CD....387
Line In....391
SD Card Slot and USB Port....388
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information....391
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording....9
Exterior Mirrors....58
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors....59
Heated Exterior Mirrors....58
Power Exterior Mirrors....58
Power-Folding Mirrors....59

# F

Fastening the Seatbelts....23
First Aid Kit....185
Floor Mats....183
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps....51
Fog Lamps - Rear
See: Rear Fog Lamps....51
Four-Wheel Drive....128
Principle of Operation....128
Front Fog Lamps....51
Front Parking Aid....146
Front Sensing System....146
Obstacle Distance Indicator....147
Fuel and Refueling....118
Fuel Consumption....122
Calculating Fuel Economy....122
Filling the Fuel Tank....122
Fuel Quality - Diesel....119
Biodiesel Usage....119
Long-Term Storage....119
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....119
Long-Term Storage....119
Fuse Box Locations....189
Auxiliary Fuse Box....191
Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Power Distribution Box - PDB) Type 2....190
Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type 1....189
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....190
Pre-fuse Box....189
Fuses....189
Fuse Specification Chart....191
Auxiliary Fuse Box - Type 1....198
Engine Compartment Fuse Box - Type 1....191
Engine Compartment Fuse Box - Type 2 (2.2L Diesel)....200
Engine Compartment Fuse Box - Type 2 (3.2L Diesel)....207
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....216
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box - Type 1....196
Fuse Specification Chart - Short Wheelbase, Chassis Cab....220
Battery Mounted Fuse Link - 2.2L Diesel....227
Battery Mounted Fuse Link- 3.2L Diesel....238
Engine Compartment Fuse Box - 2.2L Diesel....220
Engine Compartment Fuse Box- 3.2L Diesel....231
High Current Fuse Box - 2.2L Diesel....228
High Current Fuse Box - 3.2L Diesel....239
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box - 2.2L Diesel....228
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box- 3.2L Diesel....239

# G

Gauges....60
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....61
Fuel Gauge....62
Information Display....61
Type 1....60
Type 2....61



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

General Information on Radio Frequencies....29
Global Opening and Closing....57
Closing the Windows....58
Opening the Windows....58
Glove Box....109

## H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake....135
Hazard Warning Flashers....185
Headlamp Leveling....52
Headlamp Leveling to Suit Vehicle Load....53
Headlamp Removal
See: Removing a Headlamp....256
Head Restraints....100
Adjusting the head restraints....101
Removing the head restraints....101
Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
Heated Exterior Mirror....99
Heated Rear Window....99
Heated Windshield....99
Heating
See: Climate Control....90
Hill Descent Control....142
Principle of Operation....142
Hill Start Assist....135
Enable and Disable the System....136
Switching the System On and Off....136
Using Hill Start Assist....135
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....96
Cooling the Interior Quickly....98
General Hints....96
Heating the Interior Quickly....97
Recommended Settings for Cooling....98
Recommended Settings for Heating....97
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather....98
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....134
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....244

## I

Ignition Switch....112
Information Display Control....43
Information Displays....68
General Information....68
Information....401
Calendar....402
Emergency Assistance....402
Notifications....402
Information Messages....77
4x4....80
Active Park....78
Adaptive Cruise Control....78
Airbag....79
Alarm....79
Auto-Start-Stop....79
AWD....80
Battery and Charging System....81
Doors and Locks....81
Driver Alert....82
Fuel....82
Hill Descent Control....82
Hill Start Assist....82
Keys and Starting....83
Lane Keeping System....84
Maintenance....84
Parking Aid....85
Parking Brake....85
Power Steering....86
Powertrain....86
Starting System....87
Terrain Management System....87
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....88
Traction Control....88
Trailer....89
Transmission....89
Instrument Cluster....60
Interior Lamps....53
Courtesy lamp....53
Reading lamps....54
Interior Mirror....59
Auto-Dimming Mirror....59
Introduction....7



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....186
Connecting the Jumper Cables....186
To Start the Engine....187

K

Keys and Remote Controls....29

L

Lane Keeping System....159
Switching the System On and Off....160
Lighting Control....48
Headlamp Low and High Beam....50
Parking Lamps....49
Position Lamps....49
Lighting....48
General Information....48
Limited Slip Differential....133
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers....170
Load Carrying....168
General Information....168
Load Retaining Fixtures....171
Load Rest....173
Tie Down Points....171
Locking and Unlocking....37
Child play protection function....38
Driver configuration mode....38
Locking and unlocking the doors from inside....38
Locking and unlocking the doors with the key....37
Locking and unlocking the doors with the remote control....37
Locks....37
Luggage Covers....168
Locking and unlocking into position....168
Operation....168
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....276

M

Maintenance....243
General Information....243
Manual Climate Control....91
Manual Seats....102
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat....103
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....102
Folding the Seatback - Stretch cab....103
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....102
Recline Adjustment....103
Manual Transmission....124
Selecting Reverse Gear....124
Media Hub....330
Message Center
See: Information Displays....68
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
See: Windows and Mirrors....55
Mobile Communications Equipment....10
MyKey Troubleshooting....36
MyKey™....32
Principle of Operation....32

N

Navigation....408
Destination Mode....408
Map Mode....413
Michelin Travel Guide....410
Navigation Map Updates....416
Navigation Voice Commands....416
Places of Interest (POI) Categories....410
Quick-touch Buttons....415
Setting Your Navigation Preferences....410

O

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....251
Opening and Closing the Hood....244
Closing the Hood....244
Opening the Hood....244
Overhead Console....110

P

Parking Aids....144
Principle of Operation....144




Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Parking Brake....135
Passive Anti-Theft System....40
Arming the Engine Immobilizer....40
Coded Keys....40
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer....40
Principle of Operation....40
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....40
Personalized Settings....76
Chime deactivation....77
Languages....76
Measure units....76
MyKey....77
Temperature units....77
Phone....393
Making Calls....396
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones....395
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....394
Phone Menu Options....396
Phone Settings....399
Phone Voice Commands....400
Receiving Calls....396
Text Messaging....397
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....37
Power Seats....104
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat....104
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....104
Recline Adjustment....105
Tilting the Seat....105
Power Steering Fluid Check - Vehicles With: Hydraulic Power Assist Steering (HPAS)....253
Adding Power Steering Fluid....253
Power Windows....55
Bounce-Back....57
Driver's Door Switches (Double Cab)....55
Driver's Door Switches (Single and Stretch Cab)....55
Front and Rear Passengers' Door Switches....56
Opening and Closing Other Windows Automatically....56
Opening and Closing the Driver Side Window Automatically....56
Resetting the Memory of the Electric Windows - Vehicle with One Touch Up/Down on Driver Side only....56
Safety Mode....57
Safety Switch for the Rear Windows....56
Pre-Collision Assist....164
Using the Pre-Collision Assist System....165

# R

Rear Axle....133
Rear Fog Lamps....51
Rear Parking Aid....145
Rear Sensing System....145
Rear Seat Armrest....111
Rear Seats....105
Folding the Seatback....106
Folding the Seat Cushion....105
Unfolding the Seatback....106
Unfolding the Seat Cushion....106
Rear View Camera....147
Switching the Rear View Camera Off....149
Switching the Rear View Camera On....147
Using the Display....148
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....147
Recommended Towing Weights....176
Reduced Engine Performance....182
Refueling....121
Vehicles with Fuel Filler Cap....121
Remote Control....29
Changing the Remote Control Battery....30
Programming a New Remote Control....29
Programming the additional key....29
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....29



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Removing a Headlamp....256
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....266
Replacement Parts
Recommendation....10
Collision Repairs....10
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs....10
Warranty on Replacement Parts....10
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....31
Roadside Emergencies....185
Roof Racks and Load Carriers....170
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....182
Running Out of Fuel - Diesel....120
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....120
Fuel Run Dry Protection Feature....120

# S

Safety Precautions....118
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....24
Seatbelt Reminder....24
Turning the Seatbelt Reminder Off....25
Seatbelts....23
Principle of Operation....23
Seats....100
Security....40
Settings....370
Clock....370
Display....371
Settings....375
Sound....373
Vehicle....373
Side Airbags....27
Side Curtain Airbags....28
Sitting in the Correct Position....100
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains....272
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....150
Speed Limiter....157
Principle of Operation....157
Using the System....157
Stability Control....138
Principle of Operation....138
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....112
Starting a Diesel Engine....113
Cold or Hot Engine....113
Failure to Start....114
Starting a Gasoline Engine....112
Cold or Hot Engine....113
Engine Idle Speed after Starting....113
Failure to Start....113
Fuel Flooded Engine....113
Starting and Stopping the Engine....112
General Information....112
Steering....163
Electric Power Steering....163
Steering Wheel Lock....112
Unlocking the Steering Wheel....112
Steering Wheel....42
Storage Compartments....109
Supplementary Restraints System....26
Principle of Operation....26
Switching Off the Engine....115
Vehicles With a Turbocharger....115
Symbols Glossary....7
SYNC™ 2....361
General Information....361
SYNC™ Applications and Services....347
In the Event of a Crash....349
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off....348
SYNC AppLink....351
SYNC Emergency Assistance....348
SYNC™....332
General Information....332
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....417

# T

Tailgate....174
Lowering the Tailgate....174
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....285
Terrain Response....140
Principle of Operation....140
Tire Care....267
Tire Care....267



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....272
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....273
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures.....273
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....275
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....273
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....267
Tow Ball.....179
Anti-rattle pinch bolt removal (If equipped).....180
Driving with a trailer.....180
Driving without a trailer.....180
Maintenance.....180
Type 1.....179
Type 2.....179
Type 3.....180
Towbar Dimensions.....299
4x2 (vehicles with increased ride height) and 4x4 vehicles.....301
4x2 vehicles.....299
Towing a Trailer.....175
Towing Points.....181
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....181
All Vehicles.....181
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission.....181
Towing.....175
Traction Control.....137
Principle of Operation.....137
Trailer Sway Control.....175
Transmission.....124
Transmission
See: Transmission.....124
Transporting the Vehicle.....187
Trip Computer.....76
Average Fuel Consumption.....76
Average Speed.....76
Digital Speedometer.....76
Distance to Empty.....76
Instantaneous fuel consumption.....76
Odometer.....76
Outside Air Temperature.....76
Resetting the trip computer.....76
Trip Odometer.....76
Type Approvals.....432
Bluetooth.....434
iPod.....434
RF Certification Logos.....432
SD Card.....434

# U

Under Hood Overview - 2.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel.....247
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec-HE (122kW/165PS) - MI4.....245
Under Hood Overview - 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (Puma) Diesel.....249
Under Seat Storage.....111
Unique Driving Characteristics.....116
USB Port.....330
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....151
Automatic Cancellation.....154
Blocked Sensor.....155
Canceling the Set Speed.....153
Changing the Set Speed.....152
Detection Issues.....155
Following a Vehicle.....153
Hilly Condition Usage.....154
Overriding the System.....154
Resuming the Set Speed.....153
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....152
Setting the Gap.....153
Switching the System Off.....153
Switching the System On.....152
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....156
System Not Available.....155
Using Cruise Control.....150
Switching Cruise Control Off.....151
Switching Cruise Control On.....150



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

Using Four-Wheel Drive....128
Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive....129
Four-Wheel Drive, High Range (4H)....128
Four-Wheel Drive, Low Range (4L)....128
Shifting Between 2H and 4H....128
Shifting Between 2H and 4L....129
Shifting Between 4H and 4L....129
Two-Wheel Drive, High Range (2H)....128
Using Hill Descent Control....142
HDC Operation....142
Selecting HDC....142
Using Snow Chains....272
Vehicles with Stability Control....272
Using Stability Control....138
2-wheel drive vehicles....139
4-wheel drive vehicles....139
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....354
Accessing Your USB Song Library....358
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings....360
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port....354
Media Menu Features....358
Media Voice Commands....355
What's Playing?....355
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....336
Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu....341
Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings....344
Bluetooth Devices....345
Cell Phone Options During an Active Call....339
Cell Phone Voice Commands....337
Making a Call....339
Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time....336
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones....337
Receiving a Call....339
Text Messaging....342
Using Terrain Response....140
Off-Road Driving Aids....141
Off-road Screen....141
Terrain Response All Wheel Drive System....140
Using Traction Control....137
Using Voice Recognition....333
Helpful Hints....333
Initiating a Voice Session....334
System Interaction and Feedback....334
Using Winter Tires....272

## V

Vehicle Care....265
Vehicle Dimensions - Short Wheelbase, Chassis Cab....297
Dimensions - Chassis Cab....297
Vehicle Dimensions....292
Double cab....295
Single cab....292
Stretch cab....293
Vehicle Identification Number....302
Vehicle Identification Plate....302
Ventilation
See: Climate Control....90
Vents
See: Air Vents....90
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number....302
Voice Control....43



Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015

# W


Warning Lamps and Indicators....62
Adaptive Cruise Control Lamp....62
Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp....63
Automatic High Beam Lamp....63
Auto Start-Stop Lamp....63
Battery Warning Lamp....63
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator....63
Brake System Warning Lamp....63
Cruise Control Indicator....63
Direction Indicator....63
Door Ajar Indicator....63
Electronic Locking Differential....64
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp....63
Engine Oil Warning Lamp....64
Fasten Rear Seatbelt Warning Lamp....65
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp....64
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators....64
Front Airbag Warning Lamp....64
Front Fog Lamps Indicator....64
Frost Warning Lamp....64
Glow Plug Indicator....64
High Beam Indicator....64
Hill Descent Control....64
Hood Ajar Warning Lamp....64
Lane Keeping Aid Indicator....65
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp....65
Low Tire Pressure Warning....65
Low Washer Fluid....65
Over Speed Warning....65
Parking Lamps Indicator....65
Powertrain Fault....65
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator....65
Service Engine Soon....65
Shift Indicator....66
Speed Limiter....66
Stability Control Off Indicator....66
Stability Control Warning Lamp....66
Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp....66
Warning Triangle....185
Double cab....186
Single cab....185
Stretch cab....185
Washer Fluid Check....254
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....265
See: Wipers and Washers....44
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....276
Wheels and Tires....267
General Information....267
Technical Specifications....284
Windows and Mirrors....55
Windshield Washers....47
Type 1....47
Type 2....47
Windshield Wipers....44
Intermittent Wipe....44
Type 1....44
Type 2....44
Winter Tires
See: Using Winter Tires....272
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades....255
Wipers and Washers....44




Ranger (TKD) Vehicles Built From: 01-06-2015, EB3B-19G219-CKB enAUS, Edition date: 06/2015